

**Bit by Bit**  
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



PARENTS' GUIDE

# CONNECT



**5<sup>th</sup>**

**PRIMARY FIVE  
SECOND TERM**

**2025**



الصف الخامس الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

دار غزة

للطبع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com





# Contents

## Part 1

- Punctuation
- How to write a paragraph / a biography
- How to answer the comprehension questions
- Specification for Fifth Year Primary
- How to answer the question number 6 in the exam

## Part 2

### Theme 3 My society

- Unit 7 Homes in Egypt
- Unit 8 At the doctor's
- Unit 9 My favorite animal
- Review 3

### Theme 4 Being responsible

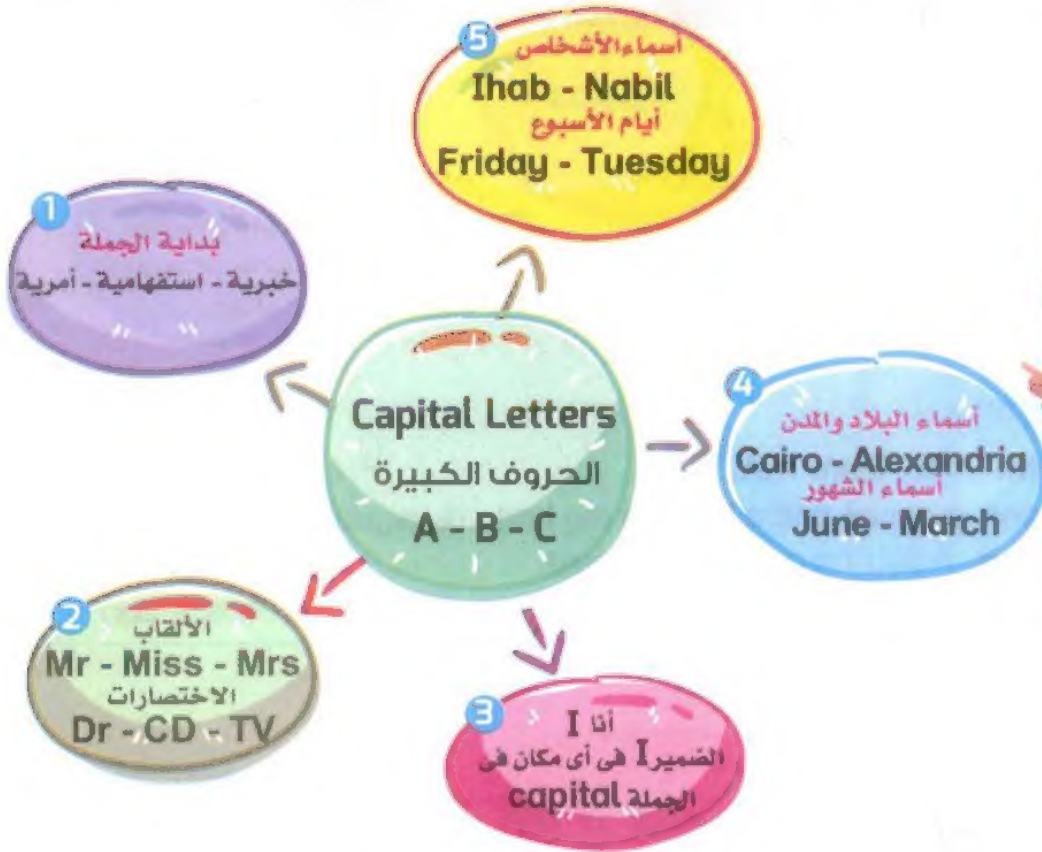
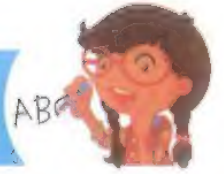
- Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt
- Unit 11 Vacations
- Unit 12 Fiction reader: A Fantastic Family Adventure
- Review 4





# Punctuation

علامات الترقيم



## Examples:

1. **I** like my family and friends.

(جملة خبرية)

2. **P**ut your book on the desk.

(جملة أمرية)

3. **What's** your favorite sport?

(جملة استفهامية)

4. **I** have a headache.

(الضمير I)

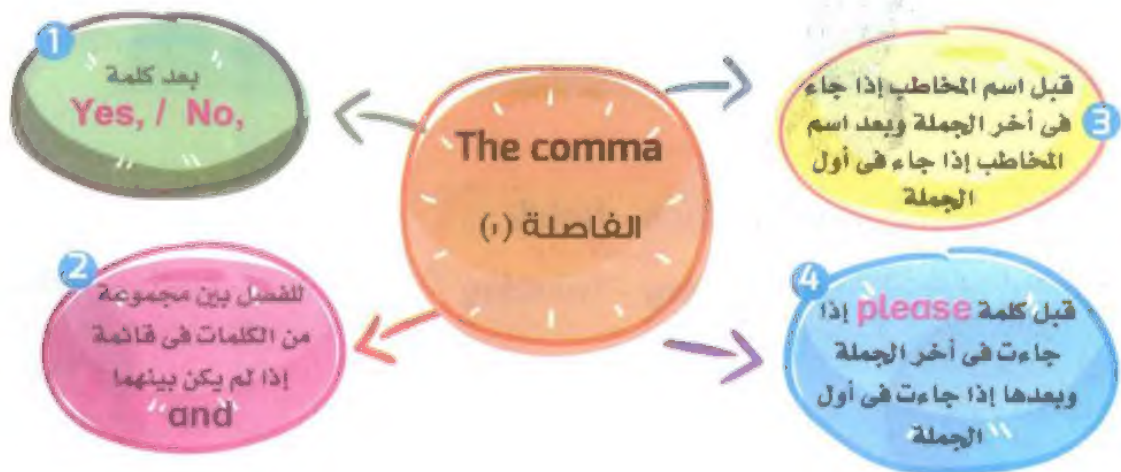
5. I went to **L**uxor last **M**ay.

(أسماء المدن والشهور)

6. **M**r Nader goes to the club on **M**onday.

(الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

## Revision



### Examples:

- 1- **Yes, I am. / No, I am not.** (بعد **Yes, / No,**)
- 2- I have a pen, a pencil and a book in my bag. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- 3- Study hard, **Adel. / Adel, study hard.** (اسم مخاطب)
- 4- Help me, **please. / Please, help me.** (كلمة **Please**)



### Examples:

1. I visited the Red Sea. (جملة خبرية)
2. Write your homework. (جملة أمرية)
3. How old are you? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hi! Sameh. (علامة تعجب)





## How to write a paragraph? كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

### كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة ثلاثون (٣٠) كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطى للتلاميذ عنصرين مساعدين قد يكونوا عبارتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

#### أولاً ترتيب الجملة

تكملة الجملة	فعل	فاعل
ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال home / yesterday happy / well	ماضي بسيط / مستمر was doing / did	مضارع بسيط / مستمر is going / go / goes
	شيء	مكان
	أسم شخص	
	Car	School
	Ahmed	

#### ثانياً صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

She is fine.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

Samy is a vet.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

He went to the park.

زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We are open on Friday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

I help her.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

#### My new house

##### Guiding phrases

moved to - bigger than

My father had a new job, so we moved to a new house. It's close to his work. The new house is bigger than our old house. I like living here.



## How to write a biography?

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية؟

### كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (Biography)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة حوالى ثلاثون (٣٠) كلمة عن سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية مشهورة قد تكون رياضية أو علمية أو سياسية بالاستعانة بالعنصرين المساعدين:

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

### Mohamed Salah

#### Guiding questions

- 1- Where was he born?
- 2- Why is he a famous player?

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player around the world. He was born in Gharbia governorate in 1992. He scores many goals in his team. I like him very much.

### Ahmed Zweil

#### Guiding phrases:

was born - Egyptian scientist

Ahmed Zweil is a famous Egyptian scientist. He was clever in science. He was born in Damanhur, Egypt. He got the Noble Prize in 1999 in chemistry. He is a great man.



## Tips to answer the comprehension questions

### ارشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

#### أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

#### كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.
- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطي تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

#### لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got **a new coat**. My **new coat** is **blue and red**. My **coat** is **very nice** and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a **picture of a snow man**. I will wear **my coat** to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد

يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.....' refers to .....

#### ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

#### كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

- 1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها
- 2- حدد أهم شيء يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.
- 3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية.
- 4- اكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب.

## أمثلة مجابة

## 1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسي بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **come / see / visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

## Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

## 2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شيء يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

## Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.



# Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Primary **5**  
2024 - 2025

Marks:30

Time: One hour and a half

## A- Listening (4 Marks)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

A text about **FIFTY (50)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions **MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark each)

## B- Reading (10 Marks)

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (1.5 Marks)

**THREE (3) MCQs** related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5 Marks)

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **THREE (3)** deletions is provided. **FOUR (4)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FOUR (4)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

(Half a mark each)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **primary FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

**A. TWO (2) MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(Half a mark each)

**B: THREE (3) open-ended** questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

---

**C- Writing (16 Marks)**

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1 Mark)**

**TWO (2)** scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences.

(Half a mark each)

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)**

**TWO (2)** structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

(Two marks each)

**7 Punctuate the following: (4 Marks)**

**TWO (2)** simple statements (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(One mark each)

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7 Marks)**

Learners are asked to write not less than **THIRTY (30)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph
- Biography

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)



## طريقة شرح السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس.

- يطلب من الطالب تصحيح الكلمة من بين القوسين حسب القواعد اللغوية التى درسها.

- يعطى للطالب جملتين للتدريب على القواعد اللغوية التى درسها ويكتب الطالب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة من بين القوسين.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He is ..... (is) very frightened yesterday.

He **was** very frightened yesterday.

2. She didn't ..... (went) to the park.

She didn't **go** to the park.

3. The baby is crying. He is ..... (happy).

The baby is crying. He is **unhappy**.

4. Can you ..... (reading) a story?

Can you **read** a story?

5. How do you ..... (feeling)?

How do you **feel**?

6. I like ..... (play) sports.

I like **playing** sports.

7. What do you do ..... (in) Saturdays?

What do you do **on** Saturdays?

8. Last week, my parents ..... (buys) a new apartment.

Last week, my parents **bought** a new apartment.



# My society

## Homes in Egypt

### المنازل فى مصر



#### Objectives of the Unit

#### أهداف الوحدة

- 1 Listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.
- 2 Talk about the home and furniture.  
- يتحدث الطالب عن المنزل والأثاث.
- 3 Read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمع إلى حوار قصير حول منازل مختلفة.
- 4 Understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.  
- يفهم الطالب ويستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأحداث الماضية.
5. Learn how to say double vowels.  
- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة.
6. Write a simple blog about an unusual home.  
- يكتب الطالب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غريب.
- 7 Research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.  
- يعمل الطالب بحث ويقدم عرض تقديمي عن منزل مصري قديم (في مصر القديمة).



# Lesson

# The Home

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



armchair  
كرسي ذو مسندين



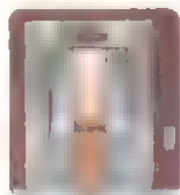
bed  
سرير



cushion  
وسادة



closet  
دولاب / خزانة



elevator مصعد

At home

في المنزل



oven فرن



shower دش



television تليفزيون

## Rooms in an apartment

living room

حجرة المعيشة

kitchen

مطبخ

balcony

بلكونة / شرفة

bedroom

حجرة النوم

bathroom

حمام

## ADJECTIVES

old

قديم

new

جديد

modern

حديث

bigger

أكبر

closer

أقرب

fantastic

رائع

easier

أسهل

traditional

تقليدي

great

رائع

lovely

جميل





## Other word



apartment	شقة	was born	وُلد
town	مدينة صغيرة	Thanks	أشكرك
How long?	كم المدة؟	space	مساحة
since	منذ	gift	هدية
parents	الوالدين	view	منظر
job	وظيفة	What about?	ماذا عن؟

## Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

welcome	مرحبًا	as you can see	مثلما ترى
share a room	بشارك غرفة مع	what a great view	بالله من منظر رائع

## Conjugation of verbs

الافعال المنظمة

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
live يعيش	lived	come in يدخل	came in
move to (يُزَل) ستنقل إلى	moved to	have to يجب أن	had to
cook يطبخ	cooked	see يرى	saw
share يشارك	shared		
prefer يفضل	preferred		

## Study the following

- 1 I moved to my new apartment. مرحبا بكم في شقتي الجديدة!
- 2 Do you like living here? هل تحب العيش هنا؟
- 3 How long did you live in your old apartment? كم المدة التي عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟
- 4 We moved to a new apartment. انتقلنا إلى شقة اقرب.
- 5 My mom says it's much easier to cook in. ما الشيء الافضل في هذه الشقة الجديده؟
- 6 My mom says it's much easier to cook in. - تقول امي ان الطهي اسهل بكثير (بداخل المطبخ).
- 7 There is a great view from my new apartment. هناك مساحة اكبر لذلك يمكننا امتلاك تلفاز اكبر.





- 8 They were a gift from Grandma. كانوا (الوسادات) هدية من الجدة.
- 9 I share a room with my sister. - اشترك غرفة مع أختي.
- 10 The apartment has a balcony with a great view. - الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!
- 11 Where do you live? - أين تسكن (تعيش)؟
- 12 Do you have a room or an apartment? - هل تعيش في منزل أم شقة؟

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

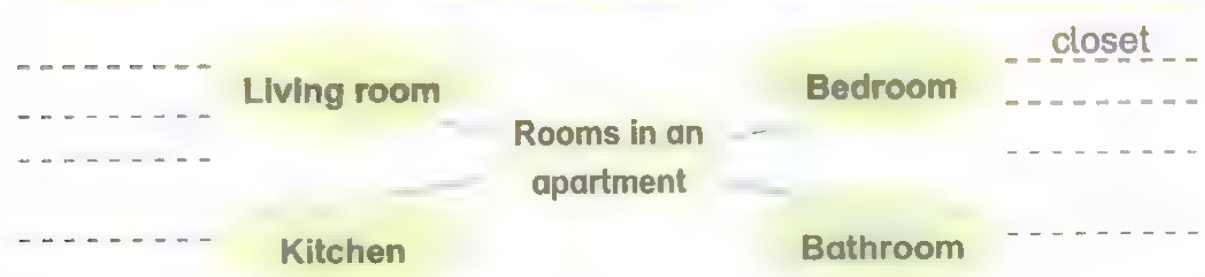
armchair - balcony - cushion - closet - elevator - oven - shower - television



2 اكمل الخريطة الذهنية:

اكتب الأشياء الآتية عند الحجر المناسبة لها.

armchair - bed - cushion - closet - oven - shower - television - cushion



Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



**Fareeda:** Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

**Dina:** Thanks! Do you like living here?

**Fareeda:** I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

**Dina:** How long did you live in your old apartment?

**Fareeda:** Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

**Dina:** So, what's better about this new apartment?

**Fareeda:** Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

**Dina:** Very nice. And this is the living room?

**Fareeda:** Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

**Dina:** Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

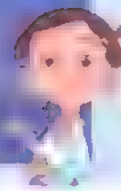
**Fareeda:** We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

**Dina:** It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!





# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

النص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Fatma lives in a modern .....  
☐ a street      ☐ city      ☐ apartment      ☐ house
- Fatma has three ..... in the living room.  
☐ closets      ☐ showers      ☐ cushion      ☐ armchairs
- Fatma bakes bread in the .....  
☐ oven      ☐ closet      ☐ cushion      ☐ elevator
- The ..... is next to the bedroom in Fatma's apartment.  
☐ balcony      ☐ living room      ☐ kitchen      ☐ bathroom

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We have a new ..... which is much easier to cook in. (2022) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون  
☐ television      ☐ oven      ☐ closet      ☐ shower
- My sister can sleep on her small .....  
☐ elevator      ☐ cushion      ☐ television      ☐ oven
- Dina ..... a room with her younger sister.  
☐ shares      ☐ comes      ☐ cooks      ☐ moves
- In the evening, I watched a film on .....  
☐ shower      ☐ armchair      ☐ television      ☐ elevator
- There's a big oven in the ..... (2024) الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق  
☐ kitchen      ☐ bathroom      ☐ living room      ☐ bedroom

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**balcony - bathroom - share - near**

Adel's family moved to a new apartment in Giza. It's much bigger than their old apartment. The new apartment is ① ..... the Pyramids. We can see a wonderful view from the ② ..... There are three big bedrooms in the new apartment. Adel ③ ..... a room with his brother, Emad. (2024)

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



**Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (2023)

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

- Mona moved to a new .....  
☐ a school      ☐ b class      ☒ c apartment      ☐ d city
- We cook food in the .....  
☐ a apartment      ☐ b bedroom      ☒ c television      ☐ d oven

B- Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
- How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?
- When did Mona move to the new apartment?

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- do - live - Where - you? ..... (استوسط - إدارة الفتحة (2023))
- living - here -    - you - like? ..... (2023)
- moved - apartment - to - a closer - We.
- were - a - from - They - Grandma - gift.

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what about the bedrooms

**Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My new apartment

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

**Guiding questions**

- When did you move to your new apartment?
- How is your new apartment?

# Lesson 2

## My perfect room



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



#### ADJECTIVES & OPPOSITES

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

#### Prepositions of place

on the right	على اليمين	in the middle of the room	في منتصف الغرفة
on the left	على اليسار	next to	بجوار
on the wall	على الحائط / الجدار		

#### In the jungle

howler monkey	قرد العواء (سعدان العواء)	deep	عميق / بعيد في عمق
a local villager	أحد سكان القرية المحليين	path	طريق

#### Other words

#### الكلمات الأخرى

perfect	رائع / مثالي	nearby / close	قريب
poster	ملصق	jungle	غابة
dark	مظلم	heavy rain	مطر غزير
alone	وحيد	go forward	يذهب للأمام
make friends	يكون صداقات	go back toward	يذهب للخلف تجاه
scientist	عالم	suddenly	فجأة
frightening	مرعب / مخيف	indeed	بالفعل
interested in	مهتم بـ	on holiday	في إجازة
do some research	يقوم بعمل بعض الأبحاث	sculpture	تمثال
		cases	حقائب







# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

### Present مضارع

### Past ماضٍ

### Present مضارع

### Past ماضٍ

die يموت

died

sit يجلس

sat

miss يفتقد / يفوت

missed

eat يأكل

ate

smile يبتسم

smiled

leave يغادر

left

try يحاول

tried

go يذهب

went

visit يزور

visited

meet يقابل

met

love يحب

loved

tell يخبر

told

look up ينظر لاعلى

looked up

set out يبدأ رحلة

set out

shout يصرخ

shouted

know يعرف

knew

carry يحمل

carried

wear يرتدي

wore

create ينشئ

created

come يأتي

came



unfriendly غير ودود not kind to someone

uncomfortable غير مريح something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body

unlucky غير محظوظ something bad happens to you without a reason

unsafe غير آمن dangerous

unhappy غير سعيد sad

unfair غير عادل something that happens that isn't morally right or fair



## Study the following

- 1 There is a desk next to it. - على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب.
- 2 On the way, there are lots of posters of animals. - على الحائط، يوجد الكثير من الملصقات الخاصة بالحيوانات.
- 3 My uncle is a biologist and loves animals. - عمي عالم وهو يحب الحيوانات.
- 4 The people were very friendly and helped him with his work. - كان الناس ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله.
- 5 He was very interested in howler monkeys. - كان مهتماً جداً بفروود العواء.
- 6 He knew he was very close to them. - كان يعلم أنه قريب جداً منهم.
- 7 It was very heavy rain. - كان هناك أمطار غزيرة جداً.
- 8 There was smoke everywhere and he couldn't see the people. - كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدماً أو للخلف.
- 9 Suddenly, lots of water came toward him. - فجأة جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه.
- 10 He was very frightened. - كان خائفاً جداً.
- 11 My brother was very happy, indeed! - كان عمي سعيداً جداً حقاً!
- 12 He was very happy because he misses the bus. - إنه غير محظوظ للغاية لأنه لم يلحق بالاتوبيس.
- 13 She is always smiling and tries to make people happy. - إنها غير سعيدة للغاية - فهي لا تبتسم أبداً أو تحاول تكوين صداقات.
- 14 She created a beautiful sculpture from the garbage. - صنعت تمثالاً رائعاً من القمامة.
- 15 He came and drove to the car. - حملنا حقائبنا الثقيلة إلى السيارة.



## الزمن الماضي البسيط

1

● للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.

نستخدم  
زمن الماضي  
البسيط

- للتعبير عن فعل حدث مرة واحدة في الماضي أو فعل حدث عدة مرات في الماضي  
أو حدث كان حقيقة لفترة من الوقت في الماضي.

- I        her house when I        five.
- We        to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

● يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من:

باقي الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل (كل الضمانر)

- I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

● تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

هي الأفعال التي نضيف إليها (ed) في الماضي:

want → wanted	help → help
---------------	-------------

- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) نضيف إليه (d) فقط في الماضي:

die → die	like → like
-----------	-------------

- وإذا انتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied):

study → stud	carry → carr
--------------	--------------

وهي الأفعال التي لا يضاف إليها (ed) في الماضي:

come → <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">      </span>	eat → <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">      </span>	go → <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">      </span>
verb to be { <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;">             am / is → <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">      </span>              are → <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">      </span> </div>		
have / has → <span style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">      </span>		do / does → did

2

● لنفي الفعل في الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + inf. +        + فاعل

فعل في التصريف الثاني +        + فاعل

Negative  
النفي

- He didn't go to the park.
- He never went to the park.



وفي السؤال نستخدم،

؟ مصدر الفعل inf. + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

Question

السؤال

- When people start to in Egypt?

أو ممكن ان نبدأ السؤال بـ Did وتكون الاجابة :No, or Yes,

- Did they write the homework?

- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة No, they didn't. اجابة في النفي

4

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past  
ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

Key words

الكلمات  
الدالة

The prefix (un-) (un-) يبدئ

هناك بعض المقاطع التي تسمى بادئات والتي يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى  
مثال البادئة (un-) والتي تعطي النفي من الكلمة،

happy →

safe →

⊙ لاحظ،

- happy = happy comfortable = comfortable

- He looks unhappy. = He doesn't look happy.

- The armchair is very =The armchair

اقرأ عن غرفة النوم،

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Match the words to their meanings:

صل الكلمات بمعانيها :

unfriendly



a. sad

uncomfortable



b. dangerous

• something that doesn't feel nice to sit

unlucky



on or wear on your body

unsafe



d. something that happens that isn't

morally right or fair

unhappy



• something bad happens to you

without a reason

unfair



f. not kind to someone

3 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين السابق :

1- His cat died last week. He was very .....

2- I never sit in that green armchair - it's very .....

3- Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very .....

4- That's very ..... - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!

5- He's very ..... because he missed the bus.

6- She's very ..... - she never smiles or tries to make friends.

4

## الزمن المضارع البسيط (R) and the irregular verb (I)

ضع خط تحت الافعال التي في الماضي البسيط في النص. اكتب (R) عند الافعال المنتظمة واكتب (I) عند الافعال غير المنتظمة.

استمع إلى النص



My uncle is a (1) and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in (2) for work. He loved it there because the people were very (3) and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something (4) happened to him and he was (5) he lived to tell me about it! He was very (6) (7) and wanted to do some research into their family groups. (8) told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be (9)."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very (10) them. Then the rain started. It was very (11). Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the (12) to go forward or back.

Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy (13).

- ١ - غامر
- ٢ - أمريكا الجنوبية
- ٣ - ودودين
- ٤ - محبب / مرعب
- ٥ - محبب
- ٦ - مهيب
- ٧ - قروود العواء
- ٨ - أحد سكان القرية
- المجلس
- ٩ - غير آمن
- ١٠ - قريب
- ١١ - مطر غزير
- ١٢ - طريق
- ١٣ - بالليل



Howler monkeys in the jungle

5

## الزمن المضارع البسيط (R) and the irregular verb (I)

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الافعال التي بين الأقواس بصيغة الماضي البسيط.

- 1- When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we ..... (meet) some new friends.
- 2- She ..... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
- 3- We ..... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.
- 4- His grandma ..... (go) to Aswan last year.
- 5- Yesterday, my cousin ..... (come) to visit us.



كون النفي من الجمل

- 1- He traveled all over Egypt. ....
- 2- He ate Om Ali in Tanta. ....
- 3- It rained yesterday. ....
- 4- They came here by airplane. ....





# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. "....." means not kind to someone.

اختر - اذكره السليم (2023)

☐ a Good

☐ b Friendly

☒ c Unfriendly

☐ d Safe

2. On the ....., there is a closet.

☒ a night

☐ b right

☐ c write

☐ d light

3. The opposite of "safe" is .....

☐ a unhappy

☐ b dangerous

☒ c unfair

☐ d unlucky

4. Don't sleep on this bed, it's very .....

☐ a comfortable

☐ b uncomfortable

☒ c fair

☐ d unfriendly

5. My uncle is very ..... in howler monkeys.

☐ a unlucky

☐ b interested

☒ c scared

☐ d safe

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**small - right - armchair - living room**

Mona's parents had to move to a new city, so they moved to a new apartment. It is bigger than the old one. It has a large ❶ . Inside the living room, there is an ❷ on the left. There's a television on the ❸ . There is a desk in the middle of the room.

(2024)

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the howler monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were unfriendly to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "unfriendly" means

☐ a sad

☐ b dangerous

☒ c not kind

☐ d lucky



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. The text is mainly about visiting the .....

- ☐ a school      ☐ b zoo      ☐ c park      ☐ d desert

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. When did Amr go to the zoo? .....

4. Why was dad angry? .....

5. What did Amr try to do? .....

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The baby is crying. He is ..... (**happy**).
- ..... (**Do**) you visit your grandparents yesterday?
- I ..... (**visit**) my sick relatives in hospital yesterday. (2023)
- I ..... (**meet**) her in Cairo two years ago.

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. did - last - week - **What** - buy - you? .....
2. are - lots - of - posters - **There** - of animals. ....
3. grandma - year - Aswan - went - to - last - **He**. ....
4. uncle - loves - is - a scientist - **My** - and - animals. ....

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- i met Miss manar yesterday. ....

**7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقبره بسائفة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

saw howler monkeys - unsafe to go

# Lesson

# Ancient Egyptian Homes

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



mud bricks	الطوب اللبن (طوب من الطين)
roof	سطح المنزل
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص
gate	بوابة

pot	إناء
oven	فرن
sleeping area	منطقة النوم

## Other words

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	the same	نفس الشيء
the Nile	نهر النيل	outside	خارج
drinking	الشرب	crops	محاصيل
cooking	الطبخ	wooden box	صندوق خشبي
washing	الغسيل / الغسل	floor	طابق / دور في مبنى
strong	قوى	the countryside	الريف
cool	بارد (جولطيف)	chicken	دجاجة
flat	مسطح / مستوي	banks of the river	ضفاف النهر
hot nights	ليالي حاره	by	بحوار
furniture	اثاث	special style	نمط خاص
different from	مختلف عن	wind	رياح
papyrus	البردى	all right	بخير
insects	حشرات	near	قريب من / بالقرب من



## Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		Regular verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
use يستخدم	used	make يجعل / يصنع	made
paint يطلّي / يدهن	painted	keep يحافظ على / يربّي	kept
cook يطبخ / يطهو	cooked	have يملك	had
relax يسترخي	relaxed	sleep ينام	slept
cover يغطّي	covered	build يبني	built
save يوفر / يدخر	saved	grow ينمو / يزرع	grew
join يربط	joined	blow يهب (للرياح)	blew
store يخزن	stored	feel يشعر	felt
		fall يسقط	fell

### Study the following

- In Ancient Egypt, people used mud bricks to build their houses.
  - They used to make the walls very strong.
  - They used to make the walls very strong.
  - The mud bricks made very strong walls.
  - They used to make the walls very strong.
  - Some people used to make the walls very strong.
- في مصر القديمة بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.
- استخدموا مياه النيل للشرب والطبخ والغسيل.
- كما استخدموا طين من النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم.
- صنع الطوب اللبن جدرانًا (حوائط) قوية جدًا.
- أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم.
- قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة.

7 Ancient Egyptian homes all had a room for the kitchen and the storage of the house.

- كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية ، والتي كانت أكثر جزء بارد في المنزل.

8 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

- كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن وقتنا الحالي.

9 There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

- كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها.

10 They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.

- استخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب.

11 In every home there were large pots and baskets for storing food and wooden boxes for clothes.

- في كل منزل ، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس.

12 Not many people had beds or chairs.

- لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كراسي.

13 They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربيون الدجاج هناك.

1

(F). Correct the false ones in your notebook

اقرأ النص. حدد ما إذا كانت الجملة صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجملة الخطأ في كراسيتك.

استمع إلى النص



In Ancient Egypt <sup>(1)</sup>, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The <sup>(2)</sup> made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to <sup>(3)</sup> their homes <sup>(4)</sup>. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had <sup>(5)</sup>, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, <sup>(6)</sup>, and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture <sup>(7)</sup> in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

١- مصر القديمة

٢- الطوب اللبن

٣- يحافظ على

٤- بارد

٥- أسطح مستوية

٦- استريحوا

٧- أثاث

There were **seats** (8) to sit and sleep on. They used **straw** (9) to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for **storing** (10) crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

- ٨ - حصير من البوص
- ٩ - القش
- ١٠ - تخزين
- ١١ - خزانة، دوار
- ١٢ - منساجه

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with **many floors** (11). This saved **space** (12) so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- 1- A lot of people made their homes near the Nile.
- 2- In Ancient Egypt, people used water from the Red Sea for drinking.
- 3- The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool.
- 4- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes wasn't the same as today.
- 5- The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in metal boxes.
- 6- The houses in cities usually had one floor only.

## 2 Read and listen to the poem:

اقرأ واستمع إلى القصيدة.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,  
Egyptian houses had a special style:  
Dark inside with small windows,  
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,  
Outside under the stars at night,  
One family together, feeling all right.  
Mud from the Nile made their walls  
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

استمع إلى النص:



3

Listen and write the words in the boxes.

استمع واكتب الأشياء داخل المنزل المصري القديم:

gate - oven - pot - roof - reed mat - sleeping area

1 sleeping area

2

3

4

5

6



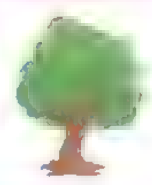


# Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات،



## (ee) / i: / words



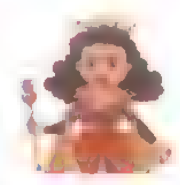
tree شجرة



sheep خروف



seed بذرة



queen ملكة

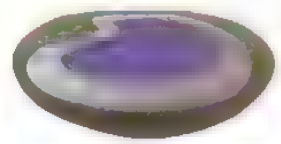
## (oo) / u: / words



spoon ملعقة



roof سطح



pool حمام سباحة



school مدرسة



tool أداة



food طعام



zoo حديقة الحيوان



smooth ناعم / أملس



noon فترة الظهيرة

## (oo) / u / words



wood خشب



book كتاب



cook يطبخ / طبخ



good جيد



wool صوف

## (oo) / /N/ words



blood دم



flood فيضان





## Homes in Egypt

- ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة (ee) / (oo) في بعض الكلمات، حيث ينطق حرفي (ee) مثل نطق صوت (e) الممتد / long e / i: لكن حرفي (oo) ممكن ان ينطقا بثلاث طرق كما يلي:
- 1- مثل صوت (o) ممتد النطق long o مثل الرمز الصوتي /u:/ كما في الكلمات: spoon - roof - school - pool
  - 2- مثل الرمز الصوتي /ʊ/ كما في الكلمات: wood - book - cook
  - 3- مثل الرمز الصوتي /ʌ/ كما في الكلمات: flood - blood

### 1 Write the double vowel words with ee or oo

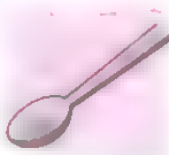
اكتب الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة ee أو oo.

1



tr ee

2



sp

3



sh

4



r

5



s

6



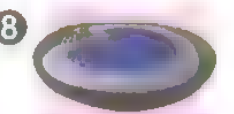
s

7



q

8



p

### 2 Listen and write the words in the box. The words are in the box.

استمع واكتب الكلمات التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وردد.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

استمع إلى النص:



1



2



3



4



5



6

### 3 Listen and check

اقرأ وضع الكلمات التي تحتوي على (oo) في العمود الصحيح في الجدول ثم استمع وتأكد.

school - book - flood - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo -  
wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (2024)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. In Ancient Egyptians, people made their houses \_\_\_\_\_ the Nile.

- ☐ a in ☐ b on ☐ c under ☐ d near

2. They used the Nile's \_\_\_\_\_ for drinking and cooking.

- ☐ a mud ☐ b papyrus ☐ c water ☐ d plants

3. They used mud from the river to make \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a beds ☐ b bricks ☐ c chairs ☐ d windows

4. Some people painted their homes \_\_\_\_\_ to make them cooler.

- ☐ a white ☐ b black ☐ c gray ☐ d blue

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**pots - roofs - reed - cover**

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes were very different from today. They were ☐ \_\_\_\_\_ mats to sit on and sleep. They used papyrus to ☐ \_\_\_\_\_ the windows and doors. In every home, there were large ☐ \_\_\_\_\_ and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. (2023)

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. had - two - in cities - floors - The houses.

2. bricks - The - strong - mud - walls - made - very. (2024)

3. their - homes - did - people - What - use - to build?





## Homes in Egypt

4. did - build - their - Where - homes - people?

5. painted - their - People - white - homes.

6. grew - chickens - and - They - kept - vegetables.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Not many people in Ancient Egypt . (have) beds or chairs.

سواء كانت الفراش أو الكراسي

2. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian (is) very different from today.

3. Many years ago, mud bricks (make) very strong walls. (2024) 2024

4. The Ancient Egyptians (store) their clothes in metal boxes in the past.

5. What (do) Ancient Egyptians use to store their crops in the the past?

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

Ancient egyptians kept their homes cool

### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Homes in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

keep their homes cool - had flat roofs

مجاب اخر الوحدة





## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



unusual homes	منازل فريدة	awesome	رائع
blogging	التدوين في مدونة	boring	ممل
ecological	بيئي / صديق للبيئة	funny	مضحك
farmhouse	منزل ريفي	brilliant	رائع
landscape	منظر طبيعي	cool	جميل
awful	فظيح	friendly	ودود
annoying	مزعج	interesting	شيق

### Other words



week	أسبوع	at the top	على القمة / في أعلى
topic	موضوع	light	ضوء
architect	مهندس معماري	local people	اشخاص / سكان محليون
Netherlands	هولندا	farm	مزرعة
online	عبر / على الإنترنت	field	حقل
upside down	مقلوب رأساً على عقب	heat	حرارة
actually	فعلياً / بالفعل	energy	طاقة
modern	حديث		

## Conjugation of verbs

الافعال المنتظمة

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
change يغير	changed	write يكتب	wrote
work يعمل	worked	take يأخذ	took
fit يلائم / يناسب	fitted	find يجد	found
		get يحصل على	got

**blogging** التدوين في مدونة to write about something in an online blog

**ecological** بيئي / صديق للبيئة related to living thing and their environments

## Study the following

- 1 I like blogging about different things. أنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
- 2 This week I'm writing about unusual homes. - اكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غريبة.
- 3 This topic is very interesting for me. - هذا الموضوع مثير جدا للاهتمام بالنسبة لي.
- 4 I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. - لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا على الإنترنت.
- 5 It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم يغيرونه الناس لجعله حديث.
- 6 Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape. - يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
- 7 It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس لتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
- 8 What do you think of it? - ما رأيك في ذلك؟
- 9 Do you like it? - هل أحببت ذلك؟

1 Read Dalida's blog and answer her question: اقرأ مدونة داليدا واجيب عن سؤالها:

## Dalida

Wednesday, 8<sup>th</sup> November

استمع إلى النص:



## Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging<sup>(1)</sup> about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual<sup>(2)</sup> homes. This topic<sup>(3)</sup> is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect<sup>(4)</sup>, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places<sup>(5)</sup>. It's really awesome!

I found this unusual house in the

Netherlands<sup>(6)</sup> - it's a farmhouse<sup>(7)</sup>! It

is actually<sup>(8)</sup> an old farmhouse which people

are changing to make it modern. This works very well because

all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light<sup>(10)</sup>. Local

people like it because it fits<sup>(11)</sup> in very well with the local landscape<sup>(12)</sup>, which is

full of farms and fields. It is also very ecological<sup>(13)</sup> because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊

What do you think of it? Do you like it?



سأكتب عن  
البيوت الغريبة

## Answer the question

- ١- التدوين
- ٢- غريب
- ٣- موضوع
- ٤- مهندس معماري
- ٥- أماكن رائعة
- ٦- هولندا
- ٧- عبر الإنترنت
- ٨- مملوك، نسا على عفت
- ٩- فعليا
- ١٠- ضوء
- ١١- يلاءم/ يتناسب
- ١٢- منظر طبيعي
- ١٣- صديق للبيئة

## 2 Decide if the sentences about Dalida's blog are True (T) or False (F). حدد إذا كانت الجمل الآتية عن مدونة داليدا ص أو خطأ.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The house is in France. <input type="checkbox"/>  | 2. It's in a city. <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3. Dalida visited the house <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. It's ecologically friendly <input type="checkbox"/> |

### Tip!

### Writing a blog

إرشادات كتابة مدونة على الإنترنت.

- 1- Write about something you like and enjoy.
- 2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
- 3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 😊 😞 😠 😡
- 4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
- 5- Check that your spelling is correct.

## 3 Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting. Sort the adjectives into positive and negative adjectives:

يصفي استخدام الصفات تشويقاً للمدونة. صنف الصفات إلى ايجابية وسلبية.

awful - annoying - awesome - boring -  
funny - brilliant - cool - friendly - interesting

### Positive

funny

### Negative

awful

## 4 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or place and write about it. Write 30-40 words:

اكتب مدونتك. اوجد منزلاً أو بيتاً غريباً. واكتب عنه من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة.

Write:

- where it is and give some information about it.
- what you think about it and why.
- ask the readers about their opinion.





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Dalia's uncle is a/an ...

☐ a architect

☐ b farmer

☐ c teacher

☐ d cook

2. Dalia's uncle lives in an old .....

☐ a houseboat

☐ b apartment

☐ c farmhouse

☐ d town

3. .... were very funny.

☐ a Chickens

☐ b Goats

☐ c Cows

☐ d Sheep

4. The ..... are brilliant.

☐ a crops

☐ b farmers

☐ c fields

☐ d animals

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**upside - blogging - architect - ecological**

Yesterday, my teacher asked us to do homework about unusual homes around the world. My mom helped me because she's an **1** ..... We found an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It's **2** ..... down. It's also very **3** ..... I liked it very much.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. homes - unusual - think of - What - you - do?

(2028)

2. is - also - ecological - very - It.

3. think - do - you - What - of - it?

4. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual.

(2028)



5. interesting - is - The topic - for me - very.

6. found - in - the Netherlands - this unusual - I - house.

#### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The windows ..... **(is)** on the top.

2. This week, I'm **(write)** about different things.

3. Do you **(liked)** this unusual home? (2022)

4. My mom is an architect and she **(take)** me to some brilliant places.

5. I like **(blog)** about different countries. (2024)

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do you think of it

#### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقوله إنسانة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Unusual homes

##### Guiding questions

1- Where is the unusual home?

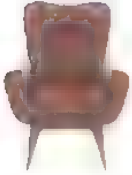
2- Why is the home unusual?

# Review



## Key vocabulary

At home في المنزل



armchair  
كرسي ذو مسندين



bed  
سرير



cushion  
وسادة



closet  
دولاب / خزانة



elevator  
مصعد



shower  
دش



television  
تليفزيون



oven  
فرن

mud bricks

الطوب اللبن

roof

سطح المنزل

reed mat

حصيرة من البوص

gate

بوابة

unusual homes

منازل غريبة

blogging

التدوين في مدونة

ecological

بيئي / صديق للبيئة

farmhouse

منزل ريفي

landscape

منظر طبيعي

awful

فظيح

annoying

مزعج

oven

فرن

sleeping area

منطقة النوم

awesome

رائع

boring

ممل

funny

مضحك

brilliant

رائع

cool

جميل

friendly

ودود

interesting

شيق

## In the jungle

howler monkey

قرد العواء

a local villager

احد سكان القرية المحليين

deep

عميق

path

طريق

## ADJECTIVES &amp; OPPOSITES

## صفات ومضادات

friendly	ودود
comfortable	مريح
lucky	محظوظ
safe	آمن
happy	سعيد
fair	عادل

unfriendly	غير ودود
uncomfortable	غير مريح
unlucky	غير محظوظ
unsafe	غير آمن
unhappy	غير سعيد
unfair	غير عادل

## Prepositions of place

## مضادات المكان

on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار
on the wall	على الحائط / الجدار

in the middle of the room	في منتصف الغرفة
in the middle of the road	بجوار

## Conjugation of verbs

## تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

live	يعيش
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)
share	يشارك
die	يموت
miss	يفتقد / يفوت
smile	يبتسم
try	يحاول
carry	يحمل
create	يُنشئ
use	يستخدم
cook	يطبخ / يطهو
save	يوفر / يدخر
work	يعمل
fit	يلئم / يناسب

lived
moved to
shared
died
missed
smiled
tried
carried
created
used
cooked
saved
worked
fitted

see	يرى
sit	يجلس
eat	يأكل
leave	يغادر
meet	يقابل
tell	يخبر
set out	يبدأ رحلة
keep	يحافظ على / يربى
sleep	ينام
build	يبني
grow	ينمو / يزرع
blow	يهب (للرياح)
feel	يشعر
fall	يسقط
write	يكتب

saw
sat
ate
left
met
told
set out
kept
slept
built
grew
blew
felt
fell
wrote

## The past simple tense

1

نستخدم  
زمن الماضي  
البسيط

● للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.

- I **visited** her house when I **was** five

● يتكون الزمن الماضي البسيط من:

باقي الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل (كل الضمانر)

- I **met** her in Cairo three years ago.

● تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

أولاً، الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي نضيف إليها (ed) في الماضي:

want → wanted

help → helped

ثانياً، الأفعال غير المنتظمة: وهي الأفعال التي لا يضاف إليها (ed) في الماضي:

come → <b>came</b>	eat → <b>ate</b>	go → <b>went</b>
verb to be {		
am / is → <b>was</b>		
are → <b>were</b>		
have / has → <b>had</b>	do / does → <b>did</b>	

● ننفي الفعل في الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + **didn't** + فاعل

فعل في التصريف الثاني + **never** + فاعل

- He **didn't go** to the park.

- He **never went** to the park.

● وفي السؤال نستخدم:

( ؟ مصدر الفعل + Inf. + فاعل + **did** + كلمة استفهام )

- When **did** people start to **live** in Egypt?

● أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ: **Did** وتكون الاجابة: **No**, or **Yes**:

- **Did** they **write** the homework?

- **Yes**, they **did**. اجابة مثبتة : **No**, they **didn't**. اجابة في النفي :

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once –

in the past – ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

2

Negative  
النفي

3

Question  
السؤال

4

Key words  
الكلمات  
الدالة





## Lesson 1

### Your new apartment

- 1 We moved to a new apartment last week. My father had a new job. He bought a fantastic apartment. There are three bedrooms. There's a big television in the living room. The new kitchen is bigger than the old one. It's easier to cook in.

## Lesson 2

### In the jungle

- 2 I went to the jungle with my father yesterday. My father is a scientist. He did some research on howler monkeys. We saw many animals in the jungle. It's unsafe to go to the jungle alone. I enjoyed my day.

## Lesson 3

### Homes in Ancient Egypt

- 3 Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes. They used mud from the river to make mud bricks. The mud bricks made very strong walls. They helped to keep their homes cool, too. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

## Lesson 4

### Unusual homes

- 4 I read a book about unusual homes. There was an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It was upside down. It was very ecological and local people liked it. It was so cool.

## Lesson 5

### The furniture in Ancient Egypt

- 5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.



# Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالازهر الشريف

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

## A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle is a ..... (farmer - teacher - vet)
2. My uncle loves ..... (food - animals - insects)
3. He has ..... children. (one - four - two)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

apartment - Twenty - live - long

- A : Where do you ① ..... ?
- B : I live in an ② .....
- A : How ③ ..... did you live in your apartment?
- B : ④ ..... years, since I was born.

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أفروا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm. There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?

.....

2. What does Magdy's father have?



**B - Choose the correct answer:**

3. There are \_\_\_\_\_ rooms in our house. (three - four - six)  
 4. They are a \_\_\_\_\_ family. (nice - sad - happy)  
 5. Magdy loves his \_\_\_\_\_. (living room - bathroom - bedroom)

**D- Vocabulary and Structures**

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I visited his house when I \_\_\_\_\_ five.  
☐ a was ☐ b am ☐ c are  
 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the left, there is my sister's bed.  
☐ a In ☐ b At ☐ c On  
 3. On the wall , there are lots of \_\_\_\_\_ of animals.  
☐ a boxes ☐ b pens ☐ c posters  
 4. His cat died last week. He was very \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a unhappy ☐ b happy ☐ c nice  
 5. I \_\_\_\_\_ her in Cairo two years ago.  
☐ a meet ☐ b met ☐ c meets

**5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - My - room - nice - living.  
 2. very - is - topic - interesting - This.  
 3. airplane - came - here - They - by.  
 4. blogging - different - like - I - things - about.  
 5. big - your - is - small - or - apartment?





# Test

Unit 7

7

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Ahmed lives in a ..... house.  
☐ a narrow      ☐ b small      ☐ c big      ☐ d dirty
- Ahmed shares his bedroom with his .....  
☐ a cousin      ☐ b sister      ☐ c brother      ☐ d parents
- There's a/an ..... next to Ahmed's bed.  
☐ a desk      ☐ b armchair      ☐ c cushion      ☐ d closet
- There are posters of ..... on Ahmed's bedroom.  
☐ a plants      ☐ b animals      ☐ c players      ☐ d fruits

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Ancient Egyptians slept on reed .....  
☐ a mats      ☐ b bats      ☐ c ovens      ☐ d bricks
- Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to make homes .....  
☐ a strong      ☐ b hot      ☐ c long      ☐ d weak
- I like sitting on this armchair. It's very .....  
☐ a comfortable      ☐ b unfriendly      ☐ c unlucky      ☐ d unsafe

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

local - howler - path - frightened

I went with my uncle to the jungle last week. My uncle is a scientist and he is interested in animals. He wanted to do research about ① ..... monkeys. The ② ..... villagers helped him, but I was very ③ .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different types of homes all over the world. Many people live in apartments in big cities. These apartments are in big buildings. The buildings have many floors so people use elevators to go to their apartments. People live in houses in the countryside. The houses have gardens around **them**. On hot nights people sleep on roofs because it is cooler there. In the desert people sleep in tents.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a people      b houses      c roofs      d floors
- The underlined word "them" refers to .....  
 a gardens      b cities      c houses      d deserts

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- Why do people use elevators? .....
- What do people do on hot nights? .....
- Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- heavy - was - very - rain - It .....
- homes - did - people - What - use to - build? .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

افرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I couldn't wear my new shoes. They were ..... (**comfortable**).
- What did you ..... (**doing**) last weekend? (**2020**)

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- i like blogging about different things .....
- what do you learn about Ancient egyptian homes? .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The furniture in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

- reed mats to sit and sleep
- large pots for storing crops



# My society

## At the doctor's

فى عيادة الطبيب



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
  - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الأمراض والعلاج.
2. Practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
  - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
3. Listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
  - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.
4. Learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".
  - يتعلم الطالب استخدام بادئات الكلام لاعطاء عكس المعنى (un - ir - il - im).
5. Understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
  - يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/.
6. Write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
  - يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن كيف تكون بصحة جيدة.
7. Plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
  - يضع الطالب خطة ما الذى يجب وضعه فى صندوق الاسعافات الأولية ويعمل ملصق.

## THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



backache  
ألم بالظهر



cold  
برد



sore throat  
التهاب بالحلق



headache  
صداع



earache  
ألم بالأذن

illnesses

الأمراض



toothache  
ألم بالأسنان



cough  
كحة / سعال

### Other words



problem	مشكلة	coach	مدرب
ankle	كاحل - رصغ القدم	feel better	يشعر بحسن
tooth	سنة	milk	لبن
stomach	معدة	honey	عسل
shoulder	كتف	practice	تدريب تمرين
swimming	السباحة	club	نادي
dentist	طبيب أسنان	really	حقًا / حدًا



At the doctor's

## ADJECTIVES



good

جيد

OK

بصحة جيدة

bad

سيء

careful

حريص

worried

قلق

## Conjugation of verbs

(الافعال المتغيرة)

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

hope

أأمل

hoped

have / has يملك - مصاب

had

talk

يتكلم

talked

hurt

يؤلم

hurt

say

يقول

said

## Language Functions

## وظائف لغوية

- What's the matter? مما تشكو؟

My + عضو الجسم + hurts.

• وللرد نستخدم،

1  
للسؤال شخص  
مما تشكو؟

- My tooth hurts.

- Can I + مصدر الفعل .....؟ .....؟ هل من الممكن أن.....؟

- Can I have some milk and honey?

2  
لطلب شيء  
بطريقة  
مهذبة

## Study the following

1 Did you have a good day at the club?

هل قضيت يوماً ممتعاً في النادي؟

2 Only five people came to the club today.

أتى خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم.

3 Are you OK?

- هل أنت بخير؟

4 My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night

- أصيب صديقي طارق بألم في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.

5 Two of my friends have a cold.

أصيب اثنين من زملائي بالبرد.

6 The coach told us to be careful.

أخبرنا المدرب بأن نكون حذرين.

7 How do you feel?

كيف تشعر؟

8 I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

- أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غداً.



9 I'm worried about my friends.

- انا قلق علي زملائي.

10 What's the matter?

- مما تشكو؟

11 Can I have some milk and honey?

- هل ممكن ان اتناول بعض من اللبن والعسل؟

12 It really hurts.

- انها تؤلمني حقًا.

13 Amr has an earache from swimming.

- عمرو مصاب بالآلم فى الأذن من السباحة.

## 1 Listen and read: How does Fares feel today?

استمع واقرأ، كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟

### Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



**Mom** Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

**Fares** Not really. Only five people came to the club today!

**Mom** : Oh no! Are they OK?

**Fares** No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

**Mom** . What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

**Fares** No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

**Mom** : How do you feel?

**Fares** Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

**Mom** : I hope so, too!

## 2 Listen again and number the pictures in the box next to them and Fares talk about them.

استمع مرة أخرى وارقم الصور حسب الحوار السابق بين فارس ووالدته،

a



b



c



d



e



f



### 3 Listen again. Circle the correct words

استمع مرة أخرى. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

- 1 Fares had a **bad** / good day at the club.
- 2 Tarek hurt his **ankle** / ear at football practice.
- 3 Fares thinks Lama went to the **doctor** / dentist.
- 4 Two of Fares's friends have a **cold** / an earache.
- 5 Fares's **leg** / back hurts.

### 4 Read the words in the box. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. then listen and check:

اقرأ الكلمات في المربع. انظر إلى الصور واكمل الجمل. ثم استمع وتأكد.

نحن الاستماع آخر الكتاب

cough - headache - shoulder - toothache

1



Mom: What's the matter, Dina?  
Do you have a **toothache** ?  
Dina: Yes. My tooth hurts!

2



Mom , can I have some milk and  
honey for my ..... please?

3



I Mu ..... hurts!

4



Mom : matter. Wael?  
Does your stomach hurt?  
Wael: No. I have a



# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Amr had a .....  
☐ a headache      ☐ toothache      ☐ backache      ☐ sore throat
2. Amr didn't come to the ..... practice.  
☐ tennis      ☐ basketball      ☐ football      ☐ swimming
3. Amr went to the .....  
☐ vet      ☐ dentist      ☐ nurse      ☐ doctor
4. The doctor told Amr to have ..... drinks.  
☐ cold      ☐ hot      ☐ sweet      ☐ unhealthy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm ..... about my sick friends.  
☐ worried      ☐ good      ☐ happy      ☐ lucky
2. I have a sore throat, I should ..... home. (2020)  
☐ clean      ☐ stay      ☐ hope      ☐ leave
3. The coach told us to be ..... (2020) - أديرة - كوشم حماده  
☐ care      ☐ careful      ☐ careless      ☐ bad
4. She went to the dentist because she had a/an ..... (2023)  
☐ earache      ☐ headache      ☐ toothache      ☐ backache
5. Lana ate something bad. She has a/an ..... (2023)  
☐ earache      ☐ cough      ☐ headache      ☐ stomachache
6. Ahmed ..... his ankle at a basketball practice. (2024)  
☐ swam      ☐ told      ☐ hurt      ☐ came

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

(2023)

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Fares had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practise last night. And Gamal had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Fares was very worried about his friends.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





## At the doctor's

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about Fares's .....  
☐ a parents      ☐ b family      ☐ c friends      ☐ d sister
- Fares was very ..... about his friends.  
☐ a happy      ☐ b worried      ☐ c unfair      ☐ d tired

### B- Answer the following questions:

- Where did Fares go yesterday? .....
- Why did Lama go to the dentist? .....
- Who had an earache? .....

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- has - Fatma - toothache - a. ....
- I - have - Can - milk - some? .....
- Ali - throat - a sore - has. ....
- the club - at - a bad - We - day - had. ....
- hurt - his - Ali - ankle - yesterday. ....

(2022) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

(2022) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

(2022) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

(2024) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My tooth ..... (hurting).
- Can I ..... (have) some medicine, please?
- How ..... (does) you feel?
- What ..... (are) the matter?

(2022) المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do you feel .....

### 7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A toothache

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

tooth hurts - go to the dentist



# Lesson 2

## How are you?



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



unwell	مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة	family members	أفراد الأسرة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)	crowded	مزدحم
staff	هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)	injections	حقن
helpful	مفيد	corridor	طريقة - ممر



### Other words



sick person = patient	شخص مريض	care for	يعتني بـ
alone	بمفرده	bridge	جسر - كوبري
instead of	بدلاً من	throat	حلق
Don't worry	لا تقلق	playground	ملعب
cut	جرح	bandage	ضمادة
text	نص	feel well	يشعر انه بخير
class	فصل - حصة	southern	جنوبي



### ADJECTIVES & OPPOSITES

### صفات ومضادات

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعي - قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني
moral	أخلاقي	immoral	غير أخلاقي
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممکن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنياً	unfit	غير لائق بدنياً
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم



# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

### Present مضارع

stay	يقيم - يبقى
clean	ينظف
turn	يحول - يلف
care	يعتني بـ
work	يعمل
treat	يعالج

### Past ماضٍ

stayed
cleaned
turned
cared
worked
treated

### Present مضارع

fall	يقع / يسقط
come in	يدخل
teach	يُدرس / يعلم
give	يعطي
become	يصبح
learn	يتعلم

### Past ماضٍ

fell
came in
taught
gave
became
learned / learnt

## Verb to have

يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب به كالآتي:

1  
**have / has**  
مصاب به

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **have** } اسم المرض +  
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **has**

- I **have** a headache.
- He **has** a sore throat.

⊙ وللفي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **don't have** } اسم المرض +  
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **doesn't have**

- I **don't** have a headache.
- He **doesn't** have a toothache.

⊙ والسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have** } اسم المرض ؟  
Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + **have**

- Do you **have** a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he **have** a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

### The prefixes (un-ir-il-im) بادئات

بادئات  
prefixes  
البادئات

- هناك بعض المقاطع التي تسمى بادئات والتي يمكن اضافتها أول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئات (un-ir-il-im) والتي تعطى النفي من الكلمة،
- و تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لاعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة مثل،

usual →

well →

• تستخدم البادئة "ir" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرف "r"،

- "ir" → responsible → irresponsible

• تستخدم البادئة "il" عندما تبدأ الصفة بحرف "l"،

- "il" → legal → illegal

• تستخدم البادئة "im" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرفي "m, p"،

- "im" → possible → impossible

moral → immoral

### Study the following

- 1 Do you have a headache? هل انت مصاب بصداع؟
- 2 Does Nader have a headache? هل نادر مصاب بصداع؟
- 3 I have a cut on my arm. - لدى جرح في ذراعي.
- 4 Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it. - لا تقلق. سوف انظف الجرح واضع عليه ضمادة.
- 5 The hospital treats patients from all over the country. - تعالج المستشفى المرضى من كل أنحاء البلاد.
- 6 It is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. - من غير المألوف أن يذهب الشخص المريض للمستشفى بمفرده.
- 7 Family usually go with their unwell relative. - تذهب الأسرة عادة مع الشخص المريض من اقاربهم.
- 8 Some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections. يتعلم بعض الناس كيفية تغيير الضمادات والبعض الآخر يتعلم كيفية إعطاء الحقن.



## At the doctor's

- 9 The nurses become teachers and the family members become students.  
- تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة متعلمين.
- 10 They have classes to teach the families.  
- لديهم حصص (دروس) لتعليم العائلات (الأسر).
- 11 It also helps the families to care for their relatives.  
- تساعد أيضًا الأسر في الاهتمام بأقاربهم.
- 12 The staff at this hospital do something special.  
- تفعل هيئة الموظفين في هذه المستشفى شيئًا مميزًا.

### 1 Listen and read. What's the matter with Ashraf?

استمع واقرأ. مما يشكو أشرف؟

Tape script



استمع إلى النص.



**Ashraf** Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

**Doctor** What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

**Ashraf** No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

**Doctor** Do you have a stomachache?

**Ashraf** No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

**Doctor** Do you have a toothache?

**Ashraf** No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

**Doctor** Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

### 2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences.

انظر إلى الصور. اكمل الجمل.

1



Salma

2



Amir

3



Reem

4



Tarek

5



Lama

1 Amir has a stomachache.

2 ..... a toothache.

3 .. a cold.

4 ..... an earache.

5 ..... a headache.





3

Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملة أو أسئلة.

1. you / an earache / Do / have / ?
2. sore / a / I / throat / have / .
- 3 a / has / He / cold / .
4. Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?
5. he / No, / doesn't / .

4

Read, understand and answer the questions.

اقرأ. أجب عن أسئلة الفهم.

Nurse : Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

5

Listen and read. What country is this hospital in?

استمع واقرأ. أي دولة بها المستشفى؟



استمع إلى النص

### A special Hospital

In a hospital in **Chennai** <sup>(1)</sup>, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital **treats** <sup>(2)</sup> patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family **members** <sup>(3)</sup>. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital **alone** <sup>(4)</sup>. Family usually go with their unwell **relatives** <sup>(5)</sup>. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But **instead of** <sup>(6)</sup> telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something **special** <sup>(7)</sup>. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have **classes** to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give **first aid** <sup>(8)</sup>.



#### الأسئلة

- 1- مدينة تشيناي
- 2- يعالج
- 3- أعضاء
- 4- بمفرده
- 5- قريب
- 6- بدلاً من
- 7- فمبر
- 8- حقن



Each afternoon, <sup>(9)</sup> from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not <sup>(10)</sup> this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients <sup>(11)</sup> to the hospital now.

٩- هيئة الموظفين

١٠- ليس فقط

١١- يعود

### 6 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box.

أكمل ملخص النص بالكلمات من بين الأقواس:

helpful - hospital - Injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a ① \_\_\_\_\_ in India. It is a very busy place that treats ② \_\_\_\_\_ from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many ③ \_\_\_\_\_ so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the ④ \_\_\_\_\_ teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_. This is ⑥ \_\_\_\_\_ for both the staff and the patients.

### 7 Read the text and write the prefix un- in the space.

prefix un-:

أعد كتابة الجمل لإعطاء عكس المعنى. استخدم البادئة "un".

1. Tarek is happy.

2. The bridge is safe.

3. Ramy is fit.

### 8 Write the prefix un- in the space.

ضع البادئات الآتية (ir, il, im) للكلمات لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

1. legal ----- 2. polite -----

3. moral ----- 4. regular -----

# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My friend Hazem was ..... yesterday.

- ☐ a good                      ☐ b ill                      ☐ c happy                      ☐ d excited

2. Hazem's ..... hurts

- ☐ a ankle                      ☐ b shoulder                      ☐ c stomach                      ☐ d tooth

3. The ..... said to Hazem to stay home.

- ☐ a parents                      ☐ b doctor                      ☐ c teacher                      ☐ d friend

4. Hazem took the ..... and felt well.

- ☐ a food                      ☐ b homework                      ☐ c medicine                      ☐ d water

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you ..... a toothache?

البحيرة - إدارة أيو حمص (2020)

- ☐ a put                      ☐ b find                      ☐ c have                      ☐ d meet

2. I can't hear well. I have a/an .....

اسبيط - إدارة الفتح (2020)

- ☐ a backbone                      ☐ b sore throat                      ☐ c cough                      ☐ d earache

3. It's helpful for patients to learn how to ..... injections.

- ☐ a give                      ☐ b treat                      ☐ c fall                      ☐ d return

4. Family usually go to hospitals with their ..... relatives.

- ☐ a well                      ☐ b unwell                      ☐ c impolite                      ☐ d impossible

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2020)

**relatives - treats - cakes - bandages**

Dr Omar is from Mansoura. He moved to New York. He works in a special hospital. He ① ..... patients. He gives them medicine. He helps the families to care for their ..... when they go home. He teaches them how to change ③ ..... and give injections. He loves his job.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة (الفللوجية - إمارة شبراخيت - 2024)

I'm Omar. My uncle is ill in the hospital in Cairo. There are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are friendly. Doctors examine patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit him every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. I hope he will be better.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "patients" means ..... people.  
☐ a well                      ☐ b sick                      ☐ c tail                      ☐ d happy
- The hospital is in .....  
☐ a Cairo                      ☐ b Giza                      ☐ c Luxor                      ☐ d Aswan

##### B- Answer the following questions:

- When is the hospital crowded? .....
- What do the doctors give patients? .....
- Who is ill in the hospital? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

- have - They - to - classes - teach - the families. (2028)
- it - does - Where - hurt? .....
- unwell - go with - usually - Family - their - relative. (2028)

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

افرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My friend Rana ..... (**have**) an earache.
- ..... (**Do**) Tarek have a backache? (خفر الشيخ - إدارة فليس - 2024)
- ..... (**Doesn't**) worry. I'll clean the cut.
- The opposite of "moral" is ..... (**irmoral**).



# Lesson 3

## The power of honey



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



bandage

ضمادة



sunscreen

كريم واقى من الشمس



pills

أقراص دواء



honey and lemon

عسل وليمون



wound

جرح



cut knee

جرح بالركبة

treatment  
heal

علاج  
يلتئم / يشفى

bacteria  
sunburn

بكتريا  
حرق شمس

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



basbousa

بسبوسة

thousand = 1000

ألف

injures

إصابات

however

بالرغم من / مع ذلك

substance

مادة

medical care

رعاية طبية

recently

حديثاً / مؤخراً

jar

برطمان

illnesses

أمراض

perhaps

ربما

countries

دول بلاد

types

أنواع

## Conjugation of verbs

### المضارع والأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

enjoy يستمتع بـ  
kill يقتل  
treat يعالج  
heal يلتئم / يُشفى  
damage يتلف

enjoyed  
killed  
treated  
healed  
damaged

cut يجرح  
know يعرف  
make يصنع  
get better يتحسن

cut  
knew  
made  
got better

### Study the following

- I cut my knee last week. جرحت ركبتى الأسبوع الماضى.
- My grandpa put a bandage on it. وضع جدى ضمادة على الجرح.
- Did you know that honey isn't only a food? هل تعلم أن العسل ليس بطعام فقط؟
- Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين.
- It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
- It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. تم استخدام (العسل) كعلاج للجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين.
- Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. تحتوى بعض أنواع العسل على أشياء تساعد فى قتل البكتيريا.
- You must be careful. يجب عليك أن تكون حذرًا.
- Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. العسل هو أكثر مادة مذاقها حلو على وجه الأرض.

treatment علاج medical care to help you get better

wound جرح an injury that damage your skin

bacteria بكتيريا very small things that can make you ill

heal يلتئم - يشفى to get better

1 Look at these items. Match them to the problems

انظر إلى الأشياء وصلها بالمشكلات المناسبة لها.



a. bandage



b. sunscreen



c. honey and lemon

1- a sore throat

2- a cut knee

3- sunburn

4- a headache



d. pills

2 What was the first time you needed an item from the list?

What happened? Tell your partner

متى آخر مرة احتجت فيها لأشياء من التمرين رقم ١؟ ماذا حدث؟ أبلغ زميلك.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

I had sunburn so I



3

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى في المقال عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتان اللتان نستخدم بهما العسل في الطعام؟

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى في المقال عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتان اللتان نستخدم بهما العسل في الطعام؟

استمع إلى النص:



Do you like honey? (1) you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a (2) for some (3) and illnesses.



In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat (4) by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. (5), scientists have tried to find out (6) why honey is so good for (7) wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey (8) things that can help to kill (9). This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your (10), you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

- ١- ريم
- ٢- علاج
- ٣- إصابات
- ٤- جروح
- ٥- حديثاً- مؤخرًا
- ٦- بالصمت
- ٧- التئام
- ٨- يحتوى على
- ٩- بكتيريا
- ١٠- خزانة

4

اقرأ الفقرة الثانية في المقال عن العسل. ما هي الكلمة التي تعني 'to get better'؟

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط سميك في المقال. صل الكلمة بمعناها.

1 treatment

2 wound

3 bacteria

4 heal

a. to get better

b. very small things that can make you ill

c. medical care to help you get better

d. an injury that damages your skin





# Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الفرق بين صوتي حرفي الـ (f) ، (v).
- ينطق حرف (f) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى ولكن بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- ينطق حرف (v) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى مع اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- وفيما يلي الكلمات التي تحتوى على الصوتين (f) ، (v).

## F /f/ sound



frog ضفدع



scarf وشاح / كوفية



fan مروحة



fruit فاكهة



leaf ورقة شجر



ferry معبدة

## V /v/ sound



vet طبيب بيطري



vegetables

خضراوات



television

تلفاز



van شاحنة مغلقة



view منظر طبيعي

life	حياة
safe	آمن
few	قليل
fine	جميل
fast	سريع
friend	صديق

leave	يفادر
live	يعيش
very	جدا
save	يحفظ / يوفر
lovely	جميل

1

أكمل الكلمات باستخدام الحرفين (F) أو (V) ثم استمع إلى النص.

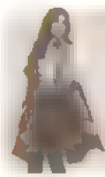
استمع إلى النص:



1. I have a pet ..... rog.



2. Hany is a ..... et.



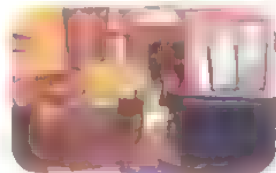
3. I have a very long  
scar .....



4. Do you like  
..... egetables?



5. I really like ..... ruit.



6. We like watching  
tele ..... ision.

2

اقرأ واستمع ثم ضع دائرة. استمع مرة أخرى وردد النطق.

استمع إلى الكلمات:



- |          |      |
|----------|------|
| 1. van   | fan  |
| 2. leave | leaf |
| 3. life  | live |
| 4. ferry | very |
| 5. few   | view |
| 6. safe  | save |

How to make the /f/ sound:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip

Blow, but **don't** use your voice!

How to make the /v/ sound:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.

Blow, but **do** use your voice!

1

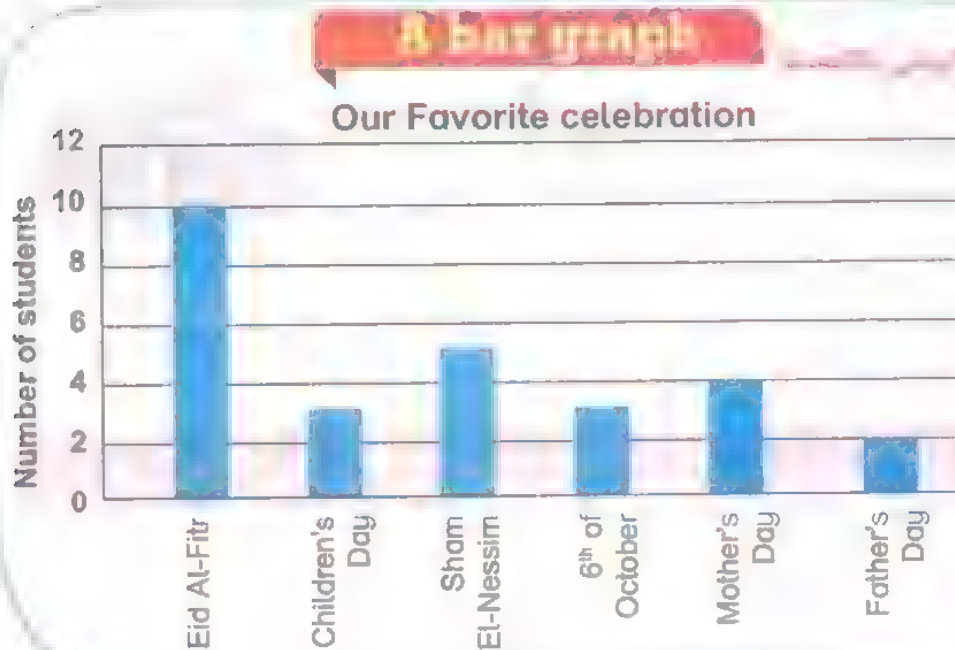
قل هذه الجمل. انطقهم بسرعة على قدر استطاعتك ( لنتمكن من التفرقة بين F و V )

1. Is there a fan in the very big van?
2. Leave the lovely leaf on the tree!
3. A few friends saw the very fine view.
4. The ferry is very fast!
5. It's safe to save your money here!

# MATH

## Bar charts

- يستخدم شريط الرسم البياني لعرض المعلومات على شكل أعمدة وفيما يلي عرض نموذج للرسم البياني باستخدام الأعمدة حيث يمثل احتفال الطلاب ببعض الأعياد:



### 1 Look and read. Then label the bar chart.

انظر واقرأ. اكمل الرسم البياني.

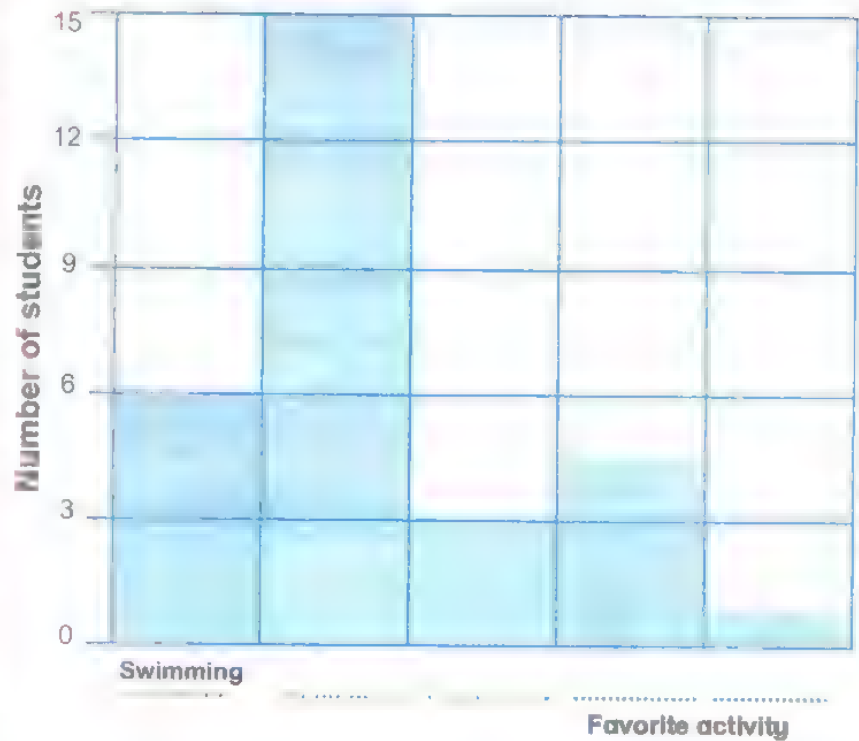
A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

الرسم البياني هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. تم سؤال ٣٠ تلميذ الأسبوع الماضي عن النشاط المفضل لديهم في أوقات فراغهم للمحافظة على صحتهم. وفيما يلي نتيجة استطلاع الرأي. أي من الأنشطة المفضلة لديه أكبر عدد من التلاميذ؟



## At the doctor's

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1

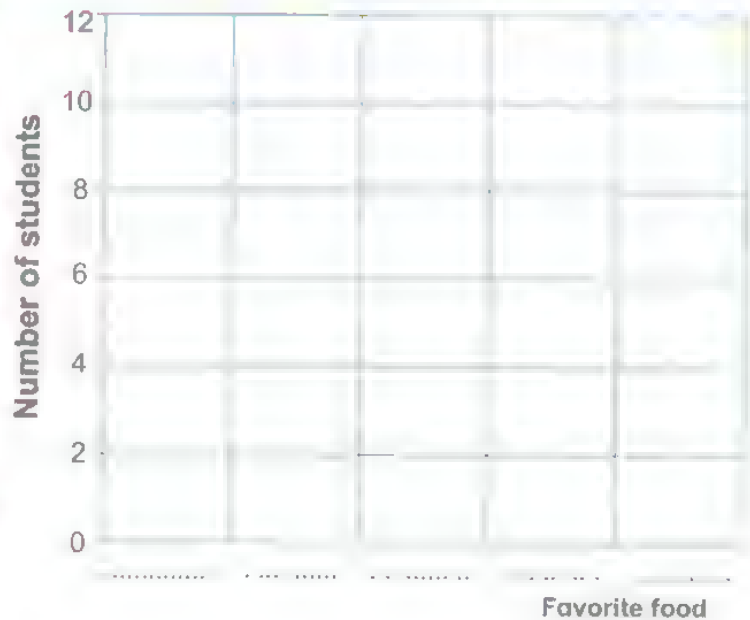


2

Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

الآن استخدم هذا الجدول لتكمل الرسم البياني:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5



# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Doaa likes ..... very much.

- a** milk                      **b** tea                      **c** honey                      **d** juice

2. Doaa has honey with .....

- a** nuts                      **b** lemon                      **c** cookies                      **d** oranges

3. Honey is good for ..... wounds.

- a** healing                      **b** cutting                      **c** making                      **d** using

4. Some types of honey can kill .....

- a** insects                      **b** bees                      **c** bacteria                      **d** cuts

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**treatment - sunburn - illness - cough**

I like honey. It's the sweetest substance on Earth. Doctors used honey for thousand of years. They used it as a **treatment** for some injuries and **illness**. If you have a **cough**, you can mix honey with milk to be better.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

I like eating honey for breakfast. We can put honey in some food like basbousa. **It** is also used as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with milk. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a sore throat, too. **2023**

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the text is about .....

- a** basbousa                      **b** milk                      **c** honey                      **d** lemon

2. We used honey with ..... if you have a sore throat

- a** treatment                      **b** lemon                      **c** milk                      **d** basbousa

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.







## At the doctor's

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "It" refer to? .....

4. How can we use honey? .....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. careful - You - be - must.

الشيء - إدارة ابتدائي (2024)

2. ferry - fast - very - is - The .

3. honey - to - I - have - like.

4. have - Doctors - honey - used - thousands - for - of years.

الشيء - إدارة ابتدائي (2024)

5. types - Some - of honey - bacteria - can - kill.

6. substance - is - on Earth - Honey - the sweetest.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do bees make honey .....

### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Honey

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

kill bacteria - help wound to heal



# Lessons 4 & 5 Writing & project

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



playing sports	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى
drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة

visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
presentation	عرض تقديمي
expert (s)	خبير / خبراء
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



focus on	يركز على
scissors	مقص
insect bite cream	كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات
cleansing wipes	مناديل تنظيف مبللة
stay healthy	يحافظ على صحته

exercise	تمرين - تدريب
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
medical gloves	قفازات طبية
rubber band	رباط مطاطي
safety pin	دبوس مثبتك

## Conjugation of verbs

## تغيير الأفعال

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

look after	يعتنى
exercise	يتمرّن
need	يحتاج

#### Past ماضٍ

looked after
exercised
needed

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

eat	يأكل
do	يفعل
keep	يحافظ
get	يحصل علي
spend	يقضى

#### Past ماضٍ

ate
did
kept
got
spent



## Language Functions

## وظائف اللغة

① لاعطاء النصيحة نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:

● نستخدم (should) لاعطاء النصيحة بمعنى، ينبغي أن، ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر،

مصدر الفعل (inf) + should + فاعل (كل الضمانر)

- You **should** eat healthy foods.

Giving advice  
اعطاء النصيحة

● وهناك صيغة أخرى لاعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "It's important to" من المهم أن

مصدر الفعل (inf) + It's important to

- It's important to get enough sleep.

It's important

● وهناك صيغة أخرى للنصيحة وهي:

من أفضل الطرق أن.... مصدر الفعل (inf) + One of the best ways to

- One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

One of the best ways

## Study the following

1 My presentation today is about staying healthy

العرض التقديمي اليوم عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك.

2 It's important to eat healthy foods.

من المهم أن تتناول أطعمة صحية.

3 You should exercise every day

يجب عليك أن تؤدي بعض التمارين كل يوم.

4 It's important to keep your body moving

من المهم أن تبقى جسمك في حالة حركة.

5 Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise

لعب الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

6 It's important to get enough sleep

من المهم أن تنام بشكل كافٍ.

7 Experts recommend you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night

يعتقد الخبراء بأنك تحتاج من ثمانية إلى تسعة ساعات نوم كل ليلة.

8 You should make time to focus on being happy.

يجب عليك أن تجعل وقتك سعيدًا.

9 Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

قضاء وقت مع الأسرة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للسعادة.



Read Asma's presentation about healthy living. She talks about:

اقرأ العرض التقديمي، لأسما.. ضع علامة ✓ على الأشياء التي تحدثت عنها.

### My list of healthy things to do

- playing sport ☐
- eating vegetables ☐
- reading books ☐
- getting enough sleep ☐
- visiting a doctor ☐
- spending time with friends ☐
- drinking plenty of water ☐



استمع إلى النص.



My presentation<sup>(1)</sup> today is about staying healthy. It is <sup>(2)</sup> important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet<sup>(3)</sup>. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body fit<sup>(4)</sup>. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. <sup>(5)</sup> get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

<sup>(6)</sup> In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus <sup>(7)</sup> being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great<sup>(8)</sup> way to do this.

١- عرض تقديمي

٢- بالفعل

٣- نظام غذائي متوازن

٤- يحافظ على حركته

الحسنة

٥- من المهم أن

٦- بالاضافة الى

٧- يركز

٨- رائع



Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences.

اقرأ مقال أسما مرة أخرى. اكمل الجمل.

1. Asma says it's important to eat ...
2. Asma says that ... is a good way to exercise
3. You should sleep between ... hours every night.
4. Spending time with your friends is good for your ...



## At the doctor's

3

أكمل فصل، أسماء، جدول عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك. انظر إلى الجدول. اكمل الجدول الخاص بك.

Key: 🌟🌟🌟 = very good 🌟🌟 = OK 🌟 = could do better

Eating healthy foods	🌟
Getting enough sleep	🌟🌟
Drinking plenty of water	🌟🌟🌟
Playing sport	🌟🌟🌟
Spending time with friends	🌟🌟

Eating healthy foods	
Getting enough sleep	
Drinking plenty of water	
Playing sport	
Spending time with friends	

4

Work in groups. Discuss and decide:

اعمل في مجموعات وناقش وقرر.

You are going on a school trip to the desert.

Your class is responsible for packing the first-aid kit. Look at the objects below. In groups, discuss which four items you want to take and why these are the most useful.

Take bandages in case someone cuts their knee.

- سوف تذهب في رحلة مدرسية في الصحراء. وفصلك مسئول عن تعبئة صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. انظر إلى الأشياء بالأسفل. ناقش في مجموعات أي من هذه الأشياء سوف توضع في صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. ولماذا هذه الأشياء مفيدة؟



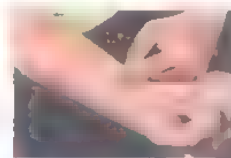
bandages



sunscreen



scissors



insect bite  
cream



cleansing  
wipes



medical gloves



rubber bands



safety pins



soap



# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احذر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need \_\_\_\_\_, I get sunburn.

- ☐ a scissors      ☐ b soap      ☐ c sunscreen      ☐ d bandages

2. It's important to have a \_\_\_\_\_ diet. (2023)

- ☐ a balanced      ☐ b irregular      ☐ c unhealthy      ☐ d impossible

3. What do you do to \_\_\_\_\_ healthy? (2023)

- ☐ a sleep      ☐ b stay      ☐ c spend      ☐ d make

4. We should take \_\_\_\_\_ in case someone cuts their knee.

- ☐ a sunscreen      ☐ b bandages      ☐ c honey      ☐ d injections

5. Playing sport at school is a good way to \_\_\_\_\_ (2024)

- ☐ a sleep      ☐ b exercise      ☐ c look      ☐ d bake

6. Drinking plenty of water keeps your body working \_\_\_\_\_

- ☐ a ill      ☐ b well      ☐ c will      ☐ d bad

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**time - plenty - hours - focus**

It's very important to have a balanced diet. We should eat healthy foods. We should do some exercise every day. We should sleep between eight or nine  every night. We can spend  with our friends and family and make time to  on being happy, too.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الـربط الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1. should - do - You - exercise - some. (2023)

2. important - It's - enough - get - sleep - to. (2023)

3. do - What - stay - do - healthy - you - to?





## Unit 1 At the doctor's

4. sport - a good - Playing - is - to exercise - way.

5. to - important - It's - eat - food - healthy.

(2024)

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

افقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You ..... (**should to**) eat healthy foods.

2. .... (**Drank**) plenty of water every day.

3. It's very important to ..... (**kept**) your body moving

4. You should ..... (**sleeps**) between 8 and 9 hours every night.

5. It's important ..... (**for**) exercise every day.

(2024)

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

you should eat vegetables

### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة اسبائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Keeping healthy

مجاب آخر الوحدة

#### Guiding questions

1- What do you do to stay healthy?

2- Who should you spend your time with?



# Review



## Illnesses

## الأمراض



**backache**

ألم بالظهر



**cold**

برد



**sore throat**

التهاب بالحلق



**headache**

صداع



**earache**

ألم بالأذن



**toothache**

ألم بالأسنان



**cough**

كحة



**cut knee**

جرح بالركبة



**sunscreen**

كريم واقى من الشمس



**pills**

أقراص دواء



**honey and lemon**

عسل وليمون



**wound**

جرح



**bandage**

ضمادة

unwell

مريض ليس بحالة جيدة

relative (s)

قريب (أقارب)

staff

هيئة الموظفين

helpful

مفيد

treatment

علاج

heal

يلتئم / يشفى

playing sports

لعب الرياضة

eating vegetables

اكل الخضراوات

reading books

قراءة الكتب

getting enough sleep

النوم بشكل كافى

visiting a doctor

زيارة الدكتور

balanced diet

نظام غذائى متوازن

family members

أفراد الأسرة

crowded

مزدحم

injections

حقن

corridor

طريقة - ممر

bacteria

بكتريا

sunburn

حرق شمسي

presentation

عرض تقديمي

spending time with friends

قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء

drinking plenty of water

شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة

expert (s)

خبير / خبراء



## ADJECTIVES & OPPOSITES

## صفات ومضادات

responsible	مسئول
legal	شرعي - قانوني
moral	أخلاقي
polite	مؤدب
possible	ممکن
fit	لائق بدنيا
usual	معتاد
regular	منتظم

responsible	غير مسئول
legal	غير قانوني
moral	غير اخلاقي
polite	غير مؤدب
possible	غير ممكن
fit	غير لائق بدنيا
usual	غير معتاد
regular	غير منتظم

## Pronunciation

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/ :

F /f/  
sound



frog ضفدع



scarf وشاح / كوفية



fan مروحة



fruit فاكهة

V /v/  
sound



vet طبيب بيطري



vegetables خضراوات



television تلفاز



van شاحنة مغلقة

## Conjugation of verbs

## تحويل الافعال

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

hope	يأمل
use	يستخدم
turn	يحول - يلف
care	يعتنى بـ
treat	يعالج
kill	يقتل
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى
damage	يتلف

#### Past ماضٍ

hoped
used
turned
cared
treated
killed
healed
damaged

#### Present مضارع

have / has	مصاب بـ - يملك
hurt	يؤلم
fall	يقع / يسقط
teach	يُدرس / يعلم
give	يعطي
become	يصبح
cut	يجرح
know	يعرف
get better	يتحسن

#### Past ماضٍ

had
hurt
fell
taught
gave
became
cut
knew
got better



Grammar

Verb to have

- يستخدم الفعل have / has للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى - كالاتي:

have / has  
مصاب بـ

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → have  
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → has } + اسم المرض .

- I have a headache.

- He has a sore throat.

● ولنفي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → don't have  
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → doesn't have } + اسم المرض .

- I don't have a headache.

- He doesn't have a toothache.

● والسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + have  
Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + have } + اسم المرض ؟

- Do you have a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

- Does he have a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

The prefixes (un - ir - il - im) البادئات

- تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لإعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة، مثل:

prefixes  
البادئات

polite → impolite      well → unwell  
regular → irregular      legal → illegal

- My friend Gamal is unwell.

- This boy is shouting. He's impolite.





Write a text of about  
**THIRTY (30) words.**

## Lesson 1

### A toothache

- 1 I had a toothache yesterday. I told my father. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me some medicine. I took the medicine. I felt better. My father told me not to eat many sweets.

## Lesson 3

### Honey

- 2 Honey is very useful. I enjoy eating it for breakfast. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. It helps wound to heal more quickly. When you have a sore throat, you can have honey with lemon.

## Lessons 4 & 5

### Keeping healthy

- 3 It's important to keep healthy. We should eat healthy foods and have a balanced diet. We should drink plenty of water and do sports. Spending time with family and friends to be happy.

## Test : Unit 8

### A cold

- 4 I had a cold last week. I didn't feel better. I went to the doctor's. The doctor told me to stay home. The doctor gave me some pills. I took the pills. I felt better today. I stayed home for three days.



# Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالازهر الشريف

## A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأجب الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I get up at ..... o'clock. (six - seven - eight)
2. I have my ..... with my parents. (lunch - breakfast - dinner)
3. I like ..... (apples - honey - oranges)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

have - matter - doctor's - going

- A : Where are you ① .....?
- B : I'm going to the ② .....
- A : What's the ③ .....?
- B : I ④ ..... a sore throat.

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ واجب عن الاسئلة:

Yesterday, Gamal went to the club. Gamal was very sad. His friend Samir hurt his ankle at football practice. His friend Yasser had an earache from swimming. They went to the hospital. Gamal was worried about my friends

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Gamal go yesterday? .....
2. Was Gamal happy at the club? .....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. His friend Samir hurt his ..... at football practice (foot - arm - ankle)
4. His friend Yasser had an earache from ..... (football - swimming - volleyball)
5. Gamal was worried about his ..... (brothers - sisters - friends)



## D- Vocabulary and Structures

### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you ..... an earache?

**a** have

**b** has

**c** had

2. I have a pet ..

**a** lion

**b** frog

**c** elephant

3. No, I ..... have a sore throat.

**a** does

**b** do

**c** don't

4. Doctors work in a .....

**a** school

**b** hospital

**c** shop

5. What ..... the matter, Wael?

**a** am

**b** are

**c** is

### 5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

امرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. hurt - his - **Tarek** - ankle - yesterday.

2. stomach - **Does** - hurt - your?

3. worried - my - **I'm** - friends - about.

4. scarf - a very - i - have - long.

5. fell - in - over - the playground - **He**.



# Test

on Unit 5



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اسمِع و أظَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. It's ..... to eat healthy food.

☐ a irregular

☐ b possible

☐ c illegal

☐ d important

2. We should do some ..... with friends.

☐ a exercise

☐ b food

☐ c sleep

☐ d homework

3. Sleeping for ..... hours is good for health.

☐ a five

☐ b four

☐ c eight

☐ d six

4. Playing sports at ..... is a good way to exercise

☐ a school

☐ b street

☐ c home

☐ d hospital

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm ..... about my unwell friends.

(2824)

☐ a unsafe

☐ b polite

☐ c worried

☐ d unfit

2. .... are very small things that can make you ill

(2823)

☐ a Bacteria

☐ b Doctors

☐ c Cupboards

☐ d Knees

3. I bought a long ..... for my mother to wear.

(2824)

☐ a fan

☐ b scarf

☐ c ferry

☐ d van

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

earache - care - stay - practice

My brother Hany didn't go to school yesterday. He was ill. He had an ① ..... from swimming. He went to swimming ② ..... last Monday. My father took Hany to the doctor. The doctor told Hany to ③ ..... home and took some medicine.



## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة (البجيرة - إدارة بلدر جملة 2023)

It is important to eat healthy foods like fruits and vegetables to have a balanced diet. There are lots of things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It is very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Go to bed early. It is important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. You should make time to focus on being happy. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Playing sport at school is a good way to .....  
 a sleep                      b look                      c write                      d exercise
2. The main idea of the text is about "....."  
 a How to play football                      b How to be fast  
 c How to be healthy                      d How to be happy

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is it important to eat healthy foods?
4. How many hours should you sleep at night?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. stomach - Does - your - hurt? ..
2. doesn't - My - a - mother - toothache - have.

(2023)

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hoda ..... (have) a sore throat last week.
2. .... (Are) you have a stomachache?

(2023)

(2023)

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- do you have a sore throat .....
- the doctor gave me some medicine .....

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة استثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A cold

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

cold - medicine



# My society

## My favorite animal

### حيواني المفضل



#### Objectives of the Unit

#### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويمثل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.

2. Listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.

3. Talk about ability now and in the past.

- يتحدث الطالب عن القدرة الآن وفي الماضي.

4. Learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق حرفي /w/ و /v/.

5. Write an email about an unusual animal.

- يكتب الطالب إيميل عن حيوان غير مألوف (غريب).

6. Research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ومخطط معلومات بياني عن حيوانات في بيئة ما.

# Lesson

# Wildlife

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



panda  
الباندا



bat  
خفاش



kangaroo  
حيوان الكونغر



lion  
أسد



penguin  
بطريق



dolphin  
دولفين

### Animals

### الحيوانات



snail  
حلزون



parrot  
ببغاء

## ADJECTIVES



beautiful  
colorful  
friendly  
different  
amazing

جميل  
زاهي / كثير الألوان  
ودود / أليف  
مختلف  
مدهش

strong  
wonderful  
awesome  
sweet  
cool

قوي  
رائع  
مذهل  
جميل  
رائع / جذاب

## Other words كلمات أخرى

wildlife park	حديقة الحياة البرية	Australia	أستراليا
shell	قوقعة	Africa	أفريقيا
sleep upside down	ينام بالمقلوب	China	الصين
snow	جليد	the ocean	المحيط
ice	ثلج	bamboo	نبات الخيزران
fridge	ثلاجة	pouch	حِراب، كيس في أسفل بطن الكونغر
the rainforest	غابة مطيرة	the dark	الظلام
a bit sad	حزين قليلاً	rabbit	أرنب

## Conjugation of verbs التحويل الافعال

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
jump يقفز	jumped	fly يطير	flew
live يعيش	lived	swim يعوم	swam
stay يمكن	stayed	sleep ينام	slept
want يريد	wanted	hide يختبئ	hid
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	feed يطعم	fed
repeat يردد	repeated	see يري	saw

## Study the following

- I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.  
- لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.
- I went to the new wildlife park.  
- ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة.
- The kangaroos were interesting, too.  
- كانت حيوانات الكونغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً.
- When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.  
- عندما يكونوا صغاراً، يجلسون داخل جراب أمهم.
- We said some words for them to repeat.  
- قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها.
- They were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark.  
- كانوا جميعاً مختبئون ولم استطع رؤيتهم في الظلام.
- Could you go near the lions?  
- هل استطعت أن تذهب بالقرب من الأسود؟
- They were in a special place inside.  
- كانوا (البطريق) في مكان خاص بالداخل.

- 9 They can swim so well. - يمكنهم السباحة جيدًا.
- 10 I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. - لدي قوقعة ليس لدي أرجل أو أيدي.
- 11 I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. - أعيش في أستراليا. أقف على رجلين.
- 12 I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. - أطيّر في الليل. أنام بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
- 13 I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. - أسبح في مجموعته مع عائلتي في المحيط.

1 Listen and read. Then say the words:

استمع واقرأ. ثم قل الكلمات.

1



kangaroo

2



panda

3



bat

4



lion

5



penguin

6



dolphin

7



snail

8



parrot

2 Read the clues. Write the correct animals:

اقرأ مفاتيح حل الالغاز. اكتب الحيوانات الصحيحة.

- I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms.
- I live in Australia. I jump on two legs.
- I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees.
- I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly.
- I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest.
- I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong.
- I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean.
- I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white.

snail

kangaroo

### 3 Read. What did Ramez go and see? اقرأ. أين ذهب رامي بالأمس؟

#### Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



**Ramez** : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family

**Ayman** : Where did you go?

**Ramez** : I went to the new  (1) - it was  (2)

**Ayman** : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

**Ramez** : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's **pouch** (3) - it's so sweet!

**Ayman** : What birds did you see?

**Ramez** : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

**Ayman** : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

**Ramez** : Yes, penguins! They were in a  (4) place inside. It was cold, like a  (5). We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

**Ayman** : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

**Ramez** : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all  (6) and I couldn't see them in the dark!

**Ayman** : Oh well, it  (7) amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

- ١- حديقة حيوانات البرية
- ٢- رائع
- ٣- حرات الكبحر
- ٤- حاض
- ٥- ثلثه
- ٦- محبسون
- ٧- بارد

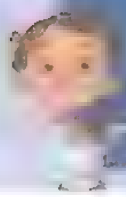
### 4 Complete the summary and the words in the box: أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة:

project - sad - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife ❶  park with his family. He  it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ❷ , kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the ❸ . He was a bit ❹  because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a ❺  on them at school.







# Activities

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

فص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. My uncle has a ....  
☐ a parrot                      ☐ b rabbit                      ☐ c fish                      ☐ d snail
2. The parrot's name is .....  
☐ a Tingo                      ☐ b Pingo                      ☐ c Mingo                      ☐ d Singo
3. The parrot can ..... what we say.  
☐ a walk                      ☐ b jump                      ☐ c take                      ☐ d repeat
4. The parrot has a beautiful .....  
☐ a beak                      ☐ b head                      ☐ c mouth                      ☐ d nose

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ..... swim in a group with his family in the ocean. (2023)  
☐ a parrot                      ☐ b dolphin                      ☐ c kangaroo                      ☐ d bat
2. The ..... lives on ice. It can swim, but it can't fly. (2023)  
☐ a snail                      ☐ b parrot                      ☐ c penguin                      ☐ d kangaroo
3. When ..... are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.  
☐ a lions                      ☐ b parrots                      ☐ c kangaroos                      ☐ d penguins
4. A ..... has a shell and doesn't have legs or arms. (2023)  
☐ a snail                      ☐ b dolphin                      ☐ c bat                      ☐ d panda

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fed - shell - parrots - awesome

I'm doing a project at school about wildlife animals so, I went to a wildlife park with my family. We saw lots of animals like penguins, parrots and kangaroos. I watched the little kangaroos sat inside their mom's pouch. My favorite birds were the ..... They were ..... and could talk. I loved penguins and ..... them some fish.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



#### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات من اليمين الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1. upside - down - **Bats** - sleep - can.

الحبزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)

2. see - birds - **What** - you - did?

3. can - **Kangaroos** - very - high - jump.

(2023) .....

4. yesterday - go - Ramez - **Where** - did?

5. **Penguins** - very - can - swim - fast.

(2024) .....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ وكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I can swim, but I ..... (**can**) fly.

الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)

2. I've got to ..... (**feeding**) my rabbit now.

3. I ..... (**have**) a wonderful day out yesterday.

4. Snails ..... (**has**) shells.

الملوهمية - إدارة الشموخ (2024)

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم تلاتي:

i couldn't see bats in the dark .....

#### 7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إسائة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

(2023)

My trip to .....

مجاب آخر الوحدة

#### Guiding questions

1- What did you see?

2- How did you go there?

# Lesson Part 1

## What could you do?

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



#### Other words

#### كلمات أخرى



quickly	بسرعة	busy	مشغول
very fast	بسرعة جدًا	German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	French	اللغة الفرنسية
amazed	مدهش	France	فرنسا
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية		

### Conjugation of verbs

#### تصريف الأفعال

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
speak	يتحدث	spoke		take	يأخذ	took	
fly	يطير	flew		ride	يركب	rode	
run	يجري	ran		read	يقرأ	read	
drive	يقود	drove		swim	يعوم	swam	

### Study the following

- 1 Birds can fly. - تستطيع الطيور أن تطير.
- 2 Lions can run very fast. - تستطيع الأسود الجري بسرعة جدًا.
- 3 Bats can sleep upside down on trees. - تنام الخفافيش بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
- 4 Snails can live in shells. - تعيش الحلزونات في قواقع.

## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

فعل في المصدر + inf + يستطيع أن + can + فاعل.

- Birds **can** fly.
- I **can play** basketball.

في النفي نستخدم:

فعل في المصدر + inf + لا يستطيع أن + can't + فاعل.

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.
- I **can't speak** Italian.

Can + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر ؟

في السؤال نستخدم:

- **Can** you play tennis?

لا حظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

فعل في المصدر + inf + could + فاعل.

- I **could** run fast last year.

فعل في المصدر + inf + couldn't + فاعل.

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

في السؤال: Could + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر ؟

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

لا حظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

ويمكن استخدام when مع could / couldn't كما يلي:

فعل في المصدر + inf + { could / couldn't } + فاعل + ماضي بسيط + فاعل + عندما  
When + فاعل + ماضي بسيط + فاعل + عندما

- **When** I lived in France, I **could** speak French.
- **OR:** I **could** speak French **when** I lived in France.

لا حظ استخدام comma ( , ) إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ When.

الماضي البسيط + فاعل + when + فعل في المصدر + inf + فاعل + Could ؟

- **Could** you ride a bike when you **were** three?

للتعبير عن:  
الاستطاعة فعل  
شيء في الحاضر  
نستخدم:

للتعبير عن:  
الاستطاعة فعل  
شيء في الماضي  
نستخدم:

اقرأ وصل،

- 1 birds
- 2 lions
- 3 snails
- 4 bats

- 1. can live in shells
- 2. can sleep upside down on trees
- 3. can fly
- 4. can run very fast



## My favorite animal

### 2 Write the correct form!

اكتب، يستطيع أو لا يستطيع،

1. Bats ..... **can** ..... fly very fast.
2. Snails ..... move quickly.
3. Parrots ..... fly.
4. Pandas ..... drive a car.

### 3 Write could or couldn't

اكتب استطاع أو لم يستطع،

1. When I was two, I **couldn't** use a computer.
2. I ..... read when I was one.
3. My sister ..... play chess when she was five, but she ..... when she was eight.
4. My cousin ..... run when he was a baby.
5. I ..... swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. .... you speak English when you were five?

### 4 Circle the correct word

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة،

1. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I .....  
☐ a can                      ☐ b can't                      ☐ c could
2. Last year, he ..... run very quickly, but now he can.  
☐ a can't                      ☐ b could                      ☐ c couldn't
3. .... you play the piano when you were a child?  
☐ a Can                      ☐ b Could                      ☐ c Couldn't
4. Sorry, I ..... help you with your homework. I'm busy.  
☐ a can                      ☐ b can't                      ☐ c could



# Lesson Part 2

## The travelers and the tree

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



nuts  
مكسرات



exhausted  
منهك (متعب جدًا)



branch of a tree  
فرع شجرة



trunk of a tree  
جذع شجرة

### مفردات إضافية

wide	واسع - عريض	shade	ظل
famous	مشهور	traders	تجار
shelter	مأوى	meeting point	مكان للتجمع (اللقاء)
rest	يستريح / راحة	breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيفة)
comfortable	مريح	useless	عديم الفائدة
save	ينقذ	ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
angry	غاضب	unkind	غير عطوف

a breeze نسيم a little wind

useless عديم الفائدة we can't use it

ungrateful ناكراً للجميل don't thank others for doing something good

comfortable مريح it's nice to sit on or wear

a meeting point  
نقطة التقاء / تجمع somewhere where people meet

### Study the following

1 Once there was a very big old tree in a hot dry land.

- كان يوجد شجرة كبيرة الحجم والعمر في يوم حار وجاف.

2 The tree was very wide and it had many green branches.

- كان جذعها (الشجرة) عريض جدًا ولديها الكثير من الفروع الخضراء.



## My favorite animal

- 3 I was **at a point** for traders. - كانت نقطة (مكان) لقاء للتجار.
- 4 They **enjoyed** the shade and the cool breeze. - استمتعوا بالظل والنفيم الرائع.
- 5 As they **rested**, they soon felt asleep. - بمجرد أن شعروا بالتعب الشديد، خلدوا إلى النوم في الحال.
- 6 There was **fruit** on its branches. - لا يوجد مكسرات أو فاكهة في فروعها.
- 7 They **felt** hot and tired. - اتيت إلى وانت تشعر بالحر والإرهاق.
- 8 I **found** a comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. - أعطيتك مكان مريح ورائع للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك.
- 9 They **went** around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry. - نظر المسافرون حولهم وراوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالندم.
- 10 It is **important** to give value to the small things in our lives. - من المهم أن نعطي قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة في حياتنا.

### 1 Match the words to the photos. Check in a dictionary

صل الكلمات بالصور. تأكد من القاموس.

a



1 trunk of a tree

b



2 branch of a tree

c



3 nuts

d



4 exhausted

اقرأ واستمع إلى اسطورة خرافية كتبها "يسوب". لماذا كانت الشجرة غاضبة؟

## Tapescript

استمع إلى النص:



Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green leaves (1). It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave (2) and (3) to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

It was near four towns and many villages in its (4) and was a meeting point (5) for traders.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some (6)." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool (7). As they were (8), they soon fell asleep.

When they (9), one of the travelers felt hungry. (10) had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is (11)," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no (12) or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so (13)?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, (14) place to sleep and I (15) your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was (16) and felt very sorry.

١- افرع

٢- ماوي

٣- راحة

٤- منطقة

٥- مكان للتجمع

٦- ظل

٧- سقيم

٨- منهك

٩- استسقط

١٠- ولا واحد منهم

١١- عديم الفائدة

١٢- مكسرات

١٣- باكر الجميل

١٤- مريح

١٥- من المحتمل

١٦- ابعد

١٧- صديق

## sentences in your notebook:

حدد إذا كانت الجملة صحيحة أو خاطئة. صحح الجملة الخاطئة في كراستك.

1. The tree was in a field with many other trees.

F

2. It was a cool, rainy day.

3. The travelers were tired.

4. The travelers were thirsty.

5. Both the travelers were ungrateful to the tree.

6. In the end the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree.



## My favorite animal

4 Look at the underlined words in the story. Circle the correct definition:

انظر إلى الكلمات التي تحتها خط في القصة. وضع دائرة حول التعريف الصحيح:

1. A breeze is a little wind / lake.
2. When something is useless, we can / can't use it
3. When someone is ungrateful, they thank / don't thank others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's nice / not nice to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people leave / meet.

5 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

اعمل في ثنائيات. اجب عن الأسئلة:

- 1 What do you think the moral of the story is?

في رأيك ما الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة؟

- ☐ It's important to plant lots of trees.
- ☐ It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.
- ☐ It's important to take food when you travel.

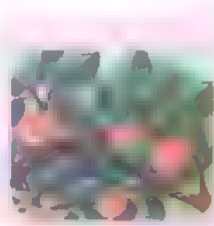
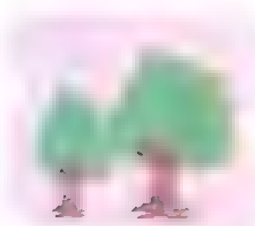
2. What do you think the travelers said to the tree at the end?

في رأيك ماذا قال المسافرين للشجرة في النهاية؟

6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. Use the pictures below to help you with your answers

اعمل في ثنائيات. اجب عن الأسئلة. استخدم الصور بالأسفل لتساعدك في إجابتك.

1. Why are trees important for humans?
2. Why are trees important for animals?
3. Why is it important to plant trees?



# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Hisham could \_\_\_\_\_ at five.  
☐ a talk      ☐ b sleep      ☐ c move      ☐ d run
- Nabil is two years \_\_\_\_\_ than Hisham.  
☐ a bigger      ☐ b older      ☐ c younger      ☐ d longer
- Hisham can use a computer and play \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a tennis      ☐ b chess      ☐ c games      ☐ d football
- Now, Nabil can \_\_\_\_\_ and sing.  
☐ a swim      ☐ b play      ☐ c read      ☐ d speak

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الإجابة الصحيحة:

- He was \_\_\_\_\_, so he fell asleep. (2024)  
☐ a exhausted      ☐ b ungrateful      ☐ c unlucky      ☐ d impossible
- A breeze is a little \_\_\_\_\_. (2023)  
☐ a rain      ☐ b wind      ☐ c lake      ☐ d light
- Trees give us \_\_\_\_\_ and shelter. (2024)  
☐ a shade      ☐ b water      ☐ c milk      ☐ d meat
- Last year, he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ chess, but now he can. (2023)  
☐ a speak      ☐ b play      ☐ c ride      ☐ d feel
- Nabil is \_\_\_\_\_, he doesn't thank others for doing something good.  
☐ a bored      ☐ b ungrateful      ☐ c useless      ☐ d comfortable

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name's Nadia. I have two brothers and a sister. When we were children, we could do many things. My brothers Adel and Walid could play football. I could play the piano.

My sister, Soha could run. Walid couldn't do his homework. I helped him. My mother could cook delicious food, but we couldn't cook any food. Now we grow up and we can cook all kinds of food and help our mother.

### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nadia has \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a no sisters      ☐ b a sister      ☐ c three sisters      ☐ d two sisters

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.







## My favorite animal

2. .... couldn't do homework.

**a** Nadia

**b** Walid

**c** Adel

**d** Soha

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. Could Nadia play the piano? .....

5. What could Nadia's brothers do? .....

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. couldn't - speak - We - German. ....

2. rested - under - They - tree - the. ....

3. ungrateful - be - How - so - can - you? .....

4 trees - for - Why - humans - are - important? (2023) .....

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Nabil couldn't ..... (**speaks**) Italian. ....

2. Last year, I ..... (**can**) play tennis. (2024) .....

3. Now, Hoda ..... (**could**) run very quickly. ....

4. .... (**Can**) you speak when you were ten months? .....

5. Hisham couldn't ..... (**played**) a guitar at seven. (2023) .....

6. We ..... (**could to**) help our mother last week. (2023) .....

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i couldn't take the bus .....

### 7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Things you could do when you were little

#### Guiding phrases

talk with my parents - run very fast

# Lesson 3

## This is so interesting



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



famous  
excellent  
professional  
clear

مشهور  
ممتاز  
محترف  
واضح

Arsenal  
relax  
ring

ارسنال (نادي انجليزي)  
يسترحى  
يرن

#### Language Notes

#### ملاحظات لغوية

نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمة أو الفعل لتكوين الاسم:

1

Suffix

(-er) اللاحقة

teach	يدرس	teacher	مدرس
read	يقرا	reader	قارئ
farm	مزرعة	farmer	فلاح
football	كرة القدم	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
travel	يسافر	traveler	مسافر
climb	يتسلق	climber	متسلق

2

Adjectives

end with (ing) - (ed)

صفات تنتهي بـ

(ing) أو بـ (ed)

نضيف (ing) أو (ed) إلى نهاية الفعل لتكوين الصفة.

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحدف ونضيف (ing) أو (ed).

لاحظ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed) توصف الشيء أو الشخص الذي يتأثر أو يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف الشيء أو الشخص الذي يسبب الصفة.

Verbs أفعال	Adjectives with (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed)	Adjectives with (ing) صفات تنتهي بـ (ing)
annoy	يزعج annoyed	annoying مزعج
amaze	يندهش amazed	amazing مذهش
interest	يهتم interested	interesting شيق
tire	تُعب tired	tiring مُتعب
surprise	يندهش surprised	surprising مفاجئ



## My favorite animal

### 1 Listen and repeat the words

استمع وردد الكلمات،

### 2 Listen again and write the words in the boxes

استمع مرة أخرى واكتب الكلمات بـ (er) ،

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

1



t

2



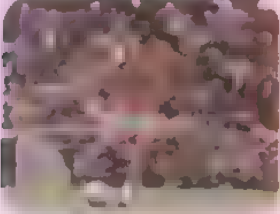
r

3



c

4



f

5



f

6



t

### 3 Complete the sentences with the words from the exercises 1 and 2

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين رقم ٢ ،

1. My grandfather was a great . He traveled to many great places around the world.
2. A famous Egyptian . in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
3. My favorite is Miss Salwa. She's very friendly and kind in the classroom.
4. My cousin is a very good . He reads about 20 books a year.

#### 4 Add (ed) and (ing) to the verbs to make adjectives.

أضف (ing) أو (ed) للأفعال لتكوين الصفات.

1. annoy → **annoyed** , **annoying**
2. amaze → \_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_
3. interest → \_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_
4. tire → \_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_
5. surprise → \_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 Complete the crossword with words from Exercise 4.

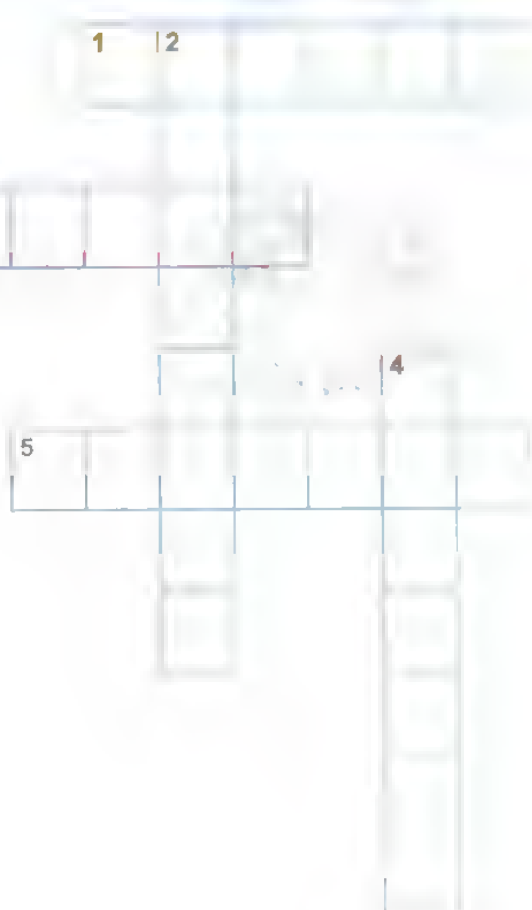
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات من التمارين 1 - 5.

##### Across:

1. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent \_\_\_\_\_ . He plants the best tomatoes in town!
3. That long walk was very \_\_\_\_\_ . I can't wait to get home and relax!
5. My uncle's a professional \_\_\_\_\_ . He goes up some very high mountains.

##### Down:

2. I find my phone really \_\_\_\_\_ . when it rings while I'm sleeping.
4. Mr Eissa is a great \_\_\_\_\_ . He makes everything clear in our lessons.



# Pronunciation

Ww

Vv

استمع إلى الكلمات.



- لاحظ نطق حرف (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف /Ww/ نعمل دائرة ضيقة بالشفيتين.



winter

الشتاء



wheel

عجلة (إطار سيارة)



wet

مبلل



whale

حوت



watermelon

بطيخة



west

الغرب



water

ماء

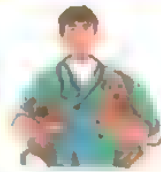


Wednesday

الأربعاء

/Vv/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف (Vv) نضغط بالأسنان العليا على الجزء السفلي للشفة.



vet

طبيب بيطري



violin

آلة الكمان



volcano

بركان



vase

زهريّة



vest

سترة (مديري)



village

قرية

1

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد.

استمع إلى الكلمات آخر الكتاب.

- |              |                   |                 |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. west vest | 2. wheel whale    | 3. vase vest    |
| 4. vet wet   | 5. violin volcano | 6. water winter |





## 2 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات:

استمع إلى الكلمات آخر الكتاب:

- |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. _____ | 2. _____ | 3. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 5. _____ | 6. _____ |
| 7. _____ | 8. _____ | 9. _____ |

## 3 Listen and write. Then listen again and check:

استمع واكتب. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب:

Last ① \_\_\_\_\_ I ② \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(1)</sup> to travel ③ \_\_\_\_\_ in my boat wearing my ④ \_\_\_\_\_ . I was looking for a ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_ but I had some problems<sup>(2)</sup>. I met some ⑥ \_\_\_\_\_ and they turned ⑦ \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(3)</sup> my boat. I had to sit on my ⑧ \_\_\_\_\_ to stay afloat<sup>(4)</sup>! I ate ⑨ \_\_\_\_\_ to stay healthy and I came to ⑩ \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(5)</sup>. I didn't find the ⑪ \_\_\_\_\_ , but I met some vets and they took me home to my ⑫ \_\_\_\_\_ !



- ١- فرر
- ٢- مشكلات
- ٣- قلبوا
- ٤- ينفى عالما
- ٥- النشاط

## 4 Listen and write the words in the correct order:

استمع وردد الكلمات أو الجمل التي تسبب تناهرا أو تلعثم اللسان. هل تستطيع أن تقولها بسرعة؟

- يقصد بـ (tongue twister) تناهر أو تلعثم اللسان من أجل توضيح مدى السرعة التي يمكنك بها التحدث بمجموعة من الكلمات لها نفس الحروف والتي يصعب نطقها معاً في جملة واحدة.



Waleed made vases on very wet wheels for vets.

صنع وليد زهريرات علي عجلات مبللة للأطباء البيطريين.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My brother is wearing a blue .....

a vest

b west

c wheel

d vase

2. My favorite season is the .....

(2024)

a water

b winter

c volcano

d watermelon

3. My uncle is a professional ..... He goes up some very high mountains.

a climbing

b climber

c climbed

d climbs

4. The history of Egypt is so .....

a interested

b interesting

c interest

d interests

5. My father travels around the world. He's a great ..... (2024) هليوبية - اديره شروق سفرا الخيمة

a traveler

b traveling

c travel

d traveled

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wore - van - vet - wet

My uncle is a vet. He lives in a village. Yesterday, he woke up early and  
① ..... his vest. He saw a ② ..... cat in the street. He took it and put it  
in his ③ ..... He gave it water and food. The cat was very happy.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather could climb high .....

a places

b walls

c mountains

d trees



2. My grandfather read about ..... books every year.

a thirteen

b thirty

c sixty

d three

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the grandfather go to the library?

4. Where did the grandfather travel?

5. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1. interested - I'm - history - very - in. (2023)

2. got - home - relax - I - to.

3. four - The - has - wheels - car.

4. kind - your - friendly - teacher - Is - and? (2023)

5. professional - My - climber - is - uncle - a. (2023)

6. makes - clear - Who - everything - lessons - in?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My favorite ..... (teaching) is Miss Mona. She is kind and helpful. (2023)

2. My uncle Youssef is very ..... (interesting) in the rocks. (2023)

3. The movie I saw yesterday was ..... (amaze).

4. This school trip was very ..... (tired).

5. The story I read was very ..... (bored). (2024)

### 6 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- do you like eating watermelons

# Lessons 4&5

## Writing & project

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)	nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
dugong	الأطوم (بقر البحر)	sea cow	بقرة البحر
	(حيوان بحري كبير الحجم من فصيلة الثدييات)	sea bed	قاع البحر
		infographic	مخطط معلومات بياني

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



email	بريد إلكتروني	bison	ثور أمريكي
cute	جميل	warm	دافئ
basketball	كرة السلة	cool	بارد
note	ملاحظة	percent	نسبة مئوية
habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات	surface	سطح
polar	قطبي	eagle	طائر العقاب
grassland	أرض عشبية	wolf	ذئب

### Writing project

تذكر

1. عند كتابة الإيميل نبدأ بـ:  
ثم نكتب:
2. نبدأ الإيميل بكلمات (Hi) أو (Hello) ثم اسم المرسل إليه.
3. ثم نقول لماذا نكتب الإيميل باستخدام عبارات مثل:  
- Just a quick note مجرد ملحوظة سريعة  
- Thanks for writing to me. شكراً للكتابة لي.
4. أعطي فكرة عن الموضوع ثم توسع في شرحه.
5. عندما نكتب لصديقك استخدم لغة غير رسمية مثل:  
- awesome / cool / I'm / كلمات مثل:  
- How's life? / How are things? عبارات مثل:
6. اختتم الإيميل بعبارات مثل:  
- Write soon. أكتب لي في أقرب وقت.  
- Hope to hear from you soon. أتمنى أن أعرف أخبارك قريباً.  
- See you soon. أراك قريباً.  
- All the best. كل الأمنيات الطيبة.  
- Bye for now. إلى اللقاء.
7. ثم نكتب إسمك.

## Study the following

- 1 I play on a team once a week - ألعب في الفريق مرة في الأسبوع.
- 2 My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - الأطوم حيواني المفضل وغير المألوف في مصر.
- 3 It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute - لديه وجه أليف و محبوب وهو حيوان رائع جدًا.
- 4 Its nickname is the sea cow - اسم الشهرة هو بقرة البحر.
- 5 It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day - يقضي ساعات طويلة يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

## 1 Read Amir's email. What is his favorite unusual animal?

اقرأ إميل أمير. ما الحيوان غير المألوف لديه؟

استمع إلى النص :



← →
□ □ ×

From: Amir

To: Tamer

Subject: Unusual animals

**New Message**

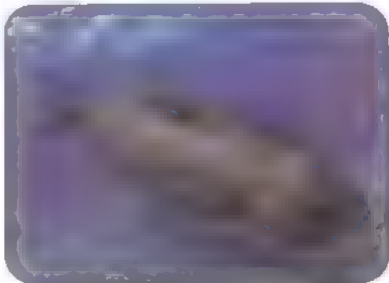
**Dear Tamer,**

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week. This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

**Amir**



**dugong**

4 | 0 | 🔍 | 📎 | 🔊 | ⌂
🗑️ | ▾





## My favorite animal

### 2 Read again and answer True (T) or False (F)

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب بـ (True) أو (False).

1. Tamer called Amir and they talked about sports.



2. Amir doesn't like sports.



3. Amir wants to talk about wildlife.



4. He sends a photo to Tamer.



5. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows.



6. He wants Tamer to write back.



### 3 Complete the email phrases:

أكمل عبارات الإيميل.

things - note - best - soon

1. See you ..... !

2. How are ..... ?

3. Just a quick .....

4. All the .....



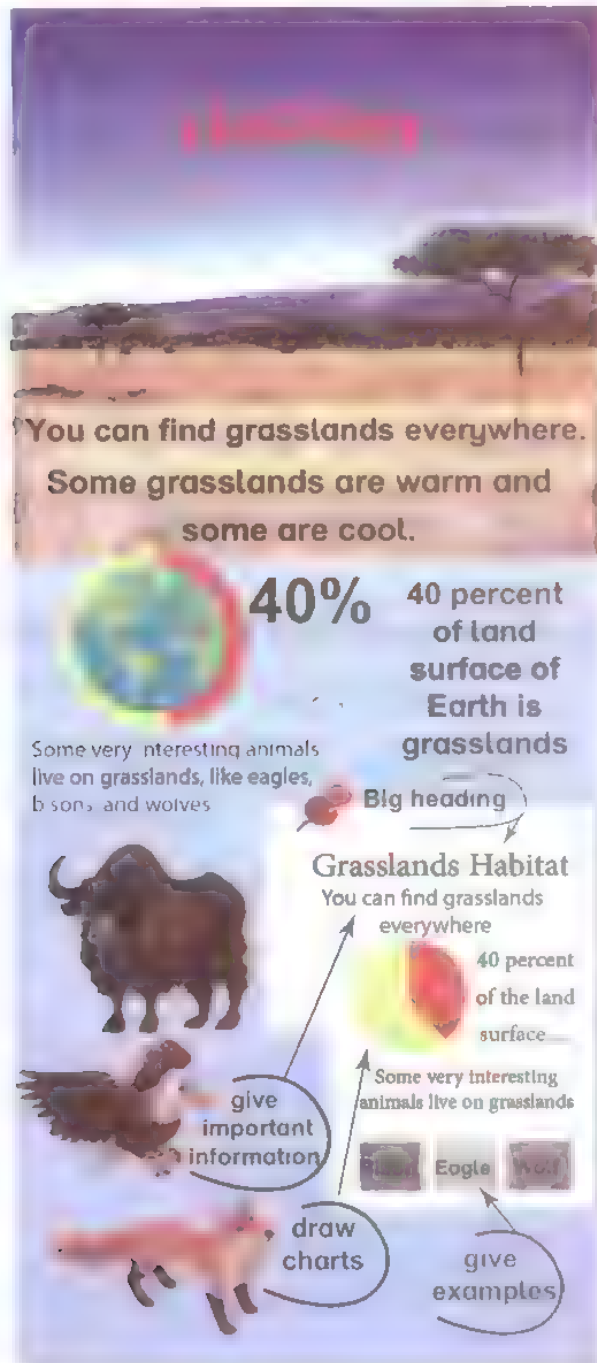
#### 4 Work in pairs. Discuss and decide.

اعملوا في ثنائيات. تناقشوا وقرروا.

You are going to make an infographic about an animal habitat. First, look at the example of an infographic. Then choose a habitat for your infographic. Here are some ideas:

- ستقوم بعمل مخطط معلومات بياني. انظر للمثال القادم أولاً لمخطط المعلومات. ثم اختر بيئة لمخططك اليك بعض الافكار.

- desert
- forest
- polar
- ocean





# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

horse - face - cute - cow

Yesterday, I watched a programme about strange animals. It was about the dugong. The dugong is very ① ..... It has lovely and friendly ② ..... Its nickname is the sea ③ ..... I loved this animal. (2024) .....

## 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. nickname - the sea - Its - cow - is.

2. you - photo - Can - the - see?

3. email - your - Thanks - for. (2024) .....

4. eats - the sea - The dugong - bed - grass - from.

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I ..... (**playing**) on a team once a week.

2. The dugong has got a lovely ..... (**friend**) face. (2024) .....

3. This week, we're ..... (**talk**) about unusual animals.

4. .... (**Writing**) back and let me know.

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. does Amir like sports

2. what s your favorite unusual animal?

# Review



## Animals

## الحيوانات



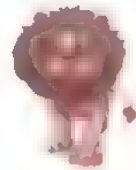
kangaroo  
حيوان الكونغر



panda  
الباندا



bat  
خفاش



lion  
أسد



penguin  
بطريق



dolphin  
دولفين



snail  
حلزون



parrot  
ببغاء

## Other words



busy	مشغول	relax	يسترخي
German	اللغة الألمانية	save	ينقذ
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	shade	ظل
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	traders	تجار
nuts	مكسرات	meeting point	مكان للتجمع
exhausted	منهك (متعب جدًا)	breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيف)
branch of a tree	فرع شجرة	useless	بلا فائدة
trunk of a tree	جذع الشجرة	ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
wide	واسع - عريض	dugong	الأطوم
famous	مشهور	sea cow	بقرة البحر
shelter	مأوى	nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
rest	يستريح	sea bed	قاع البحر
comfortable	مريح	unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)



# Pronunciation

Ww

Vv

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/



winter

الشتاء



wheel

عجلة (مطار سيارة)



whale

حوت



watermelon

بطيخة

/Vv/



vet

طبيب بيطري



violin

آلة الكمان



volcano

بركان



vase

زهريّة

## Language Focus

## ملفات صوتية

فعل في المصدر + inf + يستطيع أن + can + فاعل

-Birds **can** fly.

⊙ في النفي نستخدم:

فعل في المصدر + لا يستطيع أن + can't + فاعل

-Pandas **can't** drive a car.

ⓘ للتعبير عن:  
إستطاعة فعل  
شيء في الحاضر  
نستخدم:

⊙ في السؤال نستخدم: ؟ فعل في المصدر + inf + فاعل + Can

-**Can** you play tennis?

⊙ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

• فعل في المصدر + inf + could + فاعل. في الإثبات:

-I **could** run fast last year.

• فعل في المصدر + inf + couldn't + فاعل. في النفي:

-I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

• في السؤال: ؟ فعل في المصدر + inf + فاعل + Could

-**Could** you play the piano last year?

⊙ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

فعل في المصدر + inf + { could / couldn't } + فاعل + ماضى بسيط + فاعل + When  
عندما

-When I **was** five, I **could** speak English.

-When she **was** a baby, she **couldn't** walk.

ⓘ للتعبير عن:  
إستطاعة فعل  
شيء في الماضي  
نستخدم:





Write a text of about  
THIRTY (30) words.

## Lesson 1

### My trip to a wildlife park

- 1 Yesterday, I went to the wildlife park. I went with my family in my father's car. The animals were amazing. I saw the little kangaroos could sit inside their mom's pouch. There were beautiful parrots. They could talk and say some words.

## Lesson 1

### Things you could do when you were little

- 2 When I was little, I could talk with my parents. I could play with my toys. I couldn't walk. When I was six, I could run very fast. My mother helped me to do a lot of things.

## Test Unit 9

### The bats

- 3 Bats fly at night. They are all hiding. We can't see them in the dark. They sleep upside down on trees. They are black. I don't like them. But my teacher wants me to do a project about them.

# Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالازهر الشريف

## A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختار الإجابة الصحيحة:
1. I like ..... (animals - birds - insects)
  2. The parrot can ..... (swim - talk - read)
  3. I say some words for it to .....

## B- Language Functions

- 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

see - unusual - go - park

- A : Where did you ① ..... last weekend?
- B : I went to the new wildlife ② .....
- A : What did you ③ ..... ?
- B : I saw some ④ ..... animals.

## C- Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read the text and answer the questions: أفرا واجب عن الأسئلة:

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

### A- Answer the following questions:

1. What are we talking about this week?

2. Where's the unusual animal from?

**B - Choose the correct answer:**

3. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the \_\_\_\_\_  
(elephant - dugong - lion)
4. Its nickname is the sea \_\_\_\_\_  
(fish - whale - cow)
5. It spends many hours eating \_\_\_\_\_ from the sea bed every day  
(meat - rice - grass)

**D- Vocabulary and Structures**

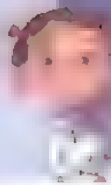
**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ can jump on two legs.  
☐ a snake                      ☐ b snail                      ☐ c kangaroo
2. It's important to \_\_\_\_\_ lots of trees.  
☐ a sleep                      ☐ b meet                      ☐ c plant
3. My favorite \_\_\_\_\_ is Miss Fatma. She is kind in the classroom.  
☐ a vet                      ☐ b doctor                      ☐ c teacher
4. Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ help you with your homework. I'm busy.  
☐ a can                      ☐ b can't                      ☐ c could
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ speak French when I lived in France.  
☐ a can                      ☐ b can't                      ☐ c could

**5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - a little - A breeze - wind.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. live - Snails - shells - can - in.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. you - Could - use - computer - a?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. plant - Is - trees - it - important - to?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. see - in - I - bats - the dark - couldn't.  
 \_\_\_\_\_



# Test

عن 11/11



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The penguin lives in the .....  
☐ a park                      ☐ b ocean                      ☐ c forest                      ☐ d wildlife
- The penguin is a ..... animal.  
☐ a lazy                      ☐ b slow                      ☐ c friendly                      ☐ d useless
- The penguin swims in a ..... with his family.  
☐ a school                      ☐ b group                      ☐ c team                      ☐ d class
- The ..... teacher was very happy about the project.  
☐ a math                      ☐ b Arabic                      ☐ c English                      ☐ d science

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A ..... lives in China and eats bamboo. (2023)  
☐ a parrot                      ☐ b panda                      ☐ c penguin                      ☐ d bat
- ..... are funny and friendly sea animals. (2023)  
☐ a Bats                      ☐ b Lions                      ☐ c Parrots                      ☐ d Dolphins
- Baby kangaroos can sit in their mom's ..... (2023)  
☐ a pouch                      ☐ b arm                      ☐ c shell                      ☐ d hand

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: (2023) أسبوع - إدارة أ.

nickname - talks - spends - cute

I'm doing research about the dugong. It's an unusual sea animal. It's very  
 ① ..... Its ② ..... is the sea cow. It ③ ..... many hours eating  
 grass from the sea bed every day.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Yesterday, we had a science lesson about the wildlife. It was an awesome lesson. Then, my teacher Miss Rasha asked us to make an infographic about the forest habitat. All the class collected some ideas about the life and animals in the forest. We drew some pictures of interesting animals like kangaroos, parrots and bats. My favorites were the parrots. They are so wonderful. They can talk and repeat words. I want to keep a parrot at home. That sounds amazing.



ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The main idea of the text is about the \_\_\_\_\_ habitat.  
☐ a desert      ☐ b forest      ☐ c grassland      ☐ d ocean
- Miss Rasha asked us to make a/an \_\_\_\_\_ about the forest.  
☐ a lesson      ☐ b project      ☐ c infographic      ☐ d email

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- What can parrots do? .....
- How was the science lesson? .....
- What did the class collect? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- feed - my - I've - rabbit - got - to. ....
- swim - Could - year - Hany - last? ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets**

اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We ..... (**Can**) use a computer last year.
- The trip I went yesterday was very ..... (**bored**) .

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- the dolphin swims in the ocean .....
- I couldn t speak German last year .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

The bats

**Guiding questions**

- When do bats fly?
- How do bats sleep?





## Objectives of Review 3

## أهداف المراجعة

### Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

### Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

- To evaluate progress in Units 7 - 9.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب في استيعاب الوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

# Lesson

## Units 7, 8 & 9

Listen and point

استمع وأشر

Transcript



استمع إلى المفردات



- 1- clock
- 2- cough
- 3- bat
- 4- closet
- 5- dolphin

- 6- kangaroo
- 7- headache
- 8- balcony
- 9- lion
- 10- shoulder

- 11- dugong
- 12- panda
- 13- oven
- 14- toothache
- 15- parrot

Start



1- clock

2-

3-

4-

5-



10-

9-

8-

7-

6-



11-

12-

13-

14-

15-

Finish



## Exercise 2 Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في القائمة:

**unhappy - unsafe - uncomfortable - unfriendly**

1. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch it was really **uncomfortable**.
2. She's very \_\_\_\_\_ because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was \_\_\_\_\_, but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. That electrical wire looks very \_\_\_\_\_ - don't touch it!



## Exercise 3 Complete the text using the verbs in the box in the regular and irregular past simple form:

أكمل النص عن يوم إنجي في الأسكندرية باستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن الماضي البسيط:

I **had** (have) a lovely day yesterday.

I **②** \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We **③** \_\_\_\_\_ (go) by train. I love trains!



When we **④** \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive), we **⑤** \_\_\_\_\_ (rush) straight to my aunt's house.

She **⑥** \_\_\_\_\_ (give) us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt **⑦** \_\_\_\_\_ (take) us to the Corniche. The sea **⑧** \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really beautiful.



## Exercise 4 Check (✓) the sentences with irregular verbs

أكمل النص عن باقي يوم إنجي في التمرين ٣. ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل التي تحتوي على أفعال غير منتظمة:

- 1- We \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) juice at a café in the square. (✓)
- 2- Then we \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to the market and \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a present for a friend. ( )
- 3- We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a great time. (✓)
- 4- I nearly \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the train home! ( )
- 5- I \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) all the way back home. ( )

# Lesson 2

## Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Label the photos with the words in the box:

ضع الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة تحت الصورة الخاصة بها.

backache - cough - earache - headache - sore throat - toothache

1



headache

2



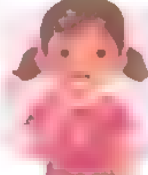
3



4



5



6



2 Put the dialog in the correct order. (الترتيب الصحيح للمحادثة)

رتب المحادثة. استمع وناكد وكرر ثم قم بالادوار في ثنائيات.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

Kareem: Thank you, nurse.

Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

Kareem: I have an earache.

Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning

## Review

### 3 Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words with the pictures:

استمع ثم اكتب الكلمات التي تسمعها. ثم صل الكلمات بالصورة.

لنص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1- panda...



2- p .....



3- d .....



4- r .....

5- s .....



6- w .....



### 4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

أكمل النص باستخدام couldn't أو could

1. I couldn't speak when I was one month old.
2. I could ride a bike when I was a baby.
3. Waleed could read when he was 6. He loves reading!
4. Amira couldn't write until she went to school.
5. Tamer's brother could drive at 20 - he passed his driving test at 18.
6. I couldn't play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.

### 5 Complete the crossword with the -er words:

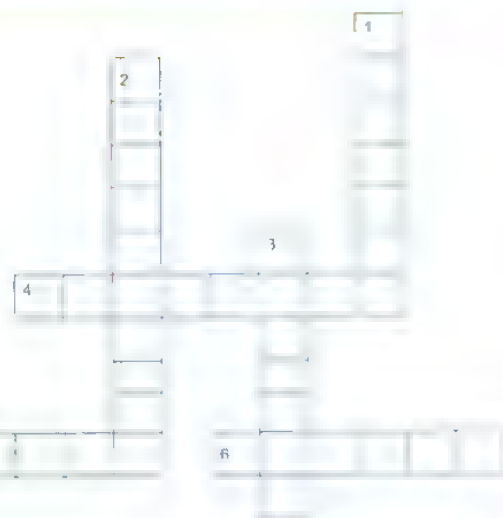
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة باستخدام كلمات تنتهي بـ er

Down

1. Someone who helps you in the classroom.
2. Someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
3. Someone who goes up mountains using a rope.

Across

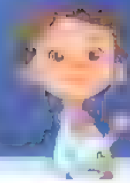
4. Someone who travels to a lot of places.
5. Someone who grows food for us.
6. Someone who reads a lot.





# Test

Unit 7, 8 & 9



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Laila lives in .....  
☐ a Aswan                      ☐ b Cairo                      ☐ c Luxor                      ☐ d Giza
2. Laila's parents moved to a ..... apartment.  
☐ a smaller                      ☐ b closer                      ☐ c longer                      ☐ d wider
3. There are four ..... in the new apartment.  
☐ a rooms                      ☐ b beds                      ☐ c cushions                      ☐ d armchairs
4. They have ..... in the living room.  
☐ a closet                      ☐ b television                      ☐ c balcony                      ☐ d gift

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. That long road is very ....., I can't walk.  
☐ a tiring                      ☐ b comfortable                      ☐ c interesting                      ☐ d amazing
2. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make bricks. (2024)  
☐ a papyrus                      ☐ b mats                      ☐ c mud                      ☐ d wood
3. When we have a headache, we take .....  
☐ a sunscreen                      ☐ b pills                      ☐ c bandages                      ☐ d bacteria

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fields - cool - sell - unfair

Trees are important in our life. They give us food and shade. When we sit under the tree on hot days, we feel ☹️. Farmers plant more trees in their ☹️. They get a lot of fruit from these trees and ☹️ them at the market.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Hoda is a pupil in primary five. She likes helping **patients**. She wants to be a nurse when she grows up. On the summer holiday, she goes to the hospital near her house. The doctors and nurses like her. They teach her how to change bandages and give injections. She helps them at the hospital. She buys books about medicine, too. She helps her family when they are sick.

Help your child deal with such questions. يساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hoda wants to be a ..... when she grows up.

- ☐ a vet                      ☐ b doctor                      ☐ c nurse                      ☐ d patient

2. The underlined word "patients" means ..... people.

- ☐ a sick                      ☐ b healthy                      ☐ c helpful                      ☐ d useful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hoda go on the summer holiday?

4. What does Hoda learn from doctors and nurses?

5. When does Hoda help her family?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. tortoise - very - Can - fast - run? .....

2. important - food - eat - to - healthy - It's. ....

(2023)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Don't touch this electric wire. It's ..... (safe). ....

(2023)

2. We drove to the shop and ..... (buy) a gift for my mother.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. could you play the guitar .....

2. I had a lovely day yesterday .....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Fact file

Food	Bamboo
Color	Black and white



# Being responsible

## Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزر مصر



### Objectives of the Unit

### اهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن الموجودة بالمدينة.
2. Practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something and to give directions.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بفعل شيء ما أو عدم فعله وإعطاء الاتجاهات.
3. Practice using questions and short answers.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
4. Read and say words with diphthongs.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على ادغام.
5. Estimate with mental math.  
- يقوم الطالب بالتقدير باستخدام الرياضيات الذهنية.
6. Write a paragraph about my town.  
- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن مدينته.
7. Make a poster about my perfect town.  
- يصنع الطالب ملصقاً عن مدينته المثالية.

# Lesson

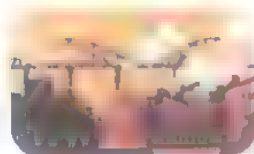
# We Love Alexandria!

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



bank بنك



factory مصنع



monument نُصب تذكاري / أثر



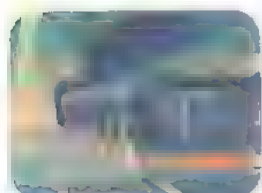
library مكتبة



shopping mall مول تجاري



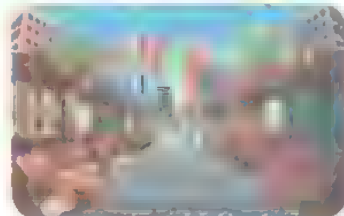
square ميدان



station محطة



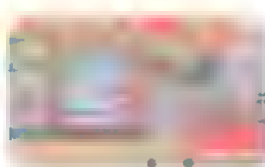
museum متحف



market سوق



beach شاطئ



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea  
local cuisine  
spend ages

شاي بالنعناع  
مأكولات / أطباق محلية  
يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally  
on vacation

في الأصل  
في إجازة

## Countries, Cities and towns

Countries	دول	Cities & towns	مدن كبيرة وصغيرة
Egypt	مصر	Alexandria	الإسكندرية
England	إنجلترا	Fayoum	الفيوم
Germany	ألمانيا	Cairo	القاهرة
		Barcelona	برشلونة

جميع أسماء الدول والمدن تبدأ بحرف capital.

## Other words

stores	مناجر محلات	friendly	ودود
tourist	سائح	the Pyramids	الأهرامات
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
chatting	دردشة	traditional food	طعام تقليدي
relaxing	مريح	fresh	طازج
excellent	ممتاز	modern buildings	مباني حديثة
culture	حضارة ثقافة	traditions	تقاليد
yet	حتى الآن	shopping	التسوق
exciting	مثير رائع	swimming	السباحة
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	mix of	مزيج / خليط من

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present

مضارع

serve	يقدم طعام
remind	يُذكّر
own	يملك

#### Past

ماضٍ

served
reminded
owned

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present

مضارع

think	يعتقد
go	يذهب
find out	يكشف
see	يري

#### Past

ماضٍ

thought
went
found out
saw





## Study the following

- 1 Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقاً للزيارة.
- 2 There's a lot to see and do here! هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا!
- 3 I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel. أحب الجلوس في الحديقة التي على سطح الفندق.
- 4 I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. أحب شرب الشاي المصري بالنعناع الحلو والمذاق والدردشة مع الآخرين.
- 5 I've lived in Alexandria all my life. لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي.
- 6 You must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. يجب أن تزور مطعمي لتتذوق بعض الطعام المحلي.
- 7 We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة لذيذة.
- 8 I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market. أفضل شراء مكونات طعامي من السوق.
- 9 We spend ages walking around them. نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التحول حولهم.
- 10 I'm Egyptian originally from Cairo. أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة.
- 11 My favorite place is the beach. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ.
- 12 I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. أنا في إجازة هنا قادماً من برشلونة.
- 13 I love the mix of modern and old buildings. أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة.
- 14 I like to find out about the culture and traditions. أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد.
- 15 There's a really big station in my town. هناك بالفعل محطة كبيرة في بلدي.





## 1 Listen and read: Who is from Alexandria? استمع واقرأ. من مدينته الإسكندرية؟

Transcript



استمع إلى النص:



### Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...



**Jens:** I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any **yet** <sup>(1)</sup>. I love just sitting in the **roof garden** <sup>(2)</sup> of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian **mint tea** <sup>(3)</sup> and chatting to other people. It's very **relaxing** <sup>(4)</sup>.

**Hanan:** I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a **restaurant** here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the **local cuisine** <sup>(5)</sup>. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have **excellent** <sup>(6)</sup> supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my **ingredients** <sup>(7)</sup> at the market in the old town.

**Kira and Lena:** We're from a small town in England. The **stores** <sup>(8)</sup> aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria — the shopping malls! We **spend ages** <sup>(9)</sup> walking around them. We like the people. They are so **friendly** <sup>(10)</sup>!

**Karim:** I'm Egyptian, **originally** <sup>(11)</sup> from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach—there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in **summer** <sup>(12)</sup>, so it's great to go there and swim.

**Paulo:** I'm on **vacation** <sup>(13)</sup> here from **Barcelona** <sup>(14)</sup>. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home — a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old **buildings** <sup>(15)</sup>. Also, I like to find out about the **culture** <sup>(16)</sup> and **traditions** <sup>(17)</sup>. The library is amazing!

### Arabic Meaning

- ١- حتى الآن
- ٢- الحدائق فوق السطح
- ٣- شاي بالنعناع
- ٤- مريح
- ٥- أكالات محلية
- ٦- ممتلئ
- ٧- مكونات الطعام
- ٨- ساحر
- ٩- يمضي وقت كثير
- ١٠- ودود
- ١١- أصلاً / في الأصل
- ١٢- الصيف
- ١٣- عطلة
- ١٤- برشلونة
- ١٥- مباني
- ١٦- ثقافة / حضارة
- ١٧- تقاليد

## 2 Listen again. Circle the correct word:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① Jens likes drinking tea in the **museum** / **hotel**.
- ② Hanan buys her ingredients from the **supermarket** / **market**.
- ③ Kira and Lena like **shopping** / **swimming** in Alexandria.
- ④ Karim lives in **Cairo** / **Alexandria**.
- ⑤ Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like **Cairo** / **Barcelona**.

3 Listen and repeat. Then look and write. استمع وردد. ثم انظر واكتب.

station - factory - library - monument - bank - square - shopping mall



4 Listen and match the places and people:

استمع وصل الأماكن بالأشخاص.

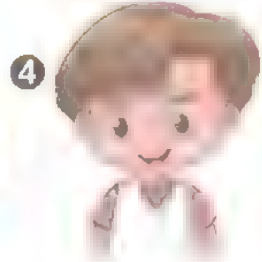
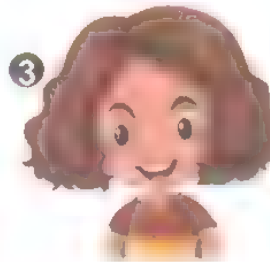
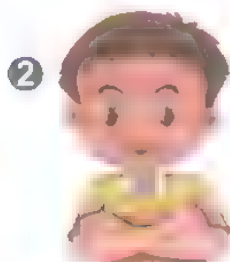
فمن الاستماع آخر الكتاب

library - monument - factory - station

Ahmed

Dina

Youssef



5 Look at the pictures and talk about the places in your town? Talk to a partner

انظر إلى الصور في تمرين 3 أي من الأماكن موجودة في مدينتك؟ تكلم مع زميلك.



There's a really big station on my town.

That's right. There's also a library.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Gamal goes to Alexandria every .....

- ☐ a year      ☐ b month      ☐ c day      ☐ d week

2. Gamal goes to Alexandria with his .....

- ☐ a friends      ☐ b family      ☐ c neighbors      ☐ d cousins

3. Gamal stays in a comfortable .....

- ☐ a bank      ☐ b hotel      ☐ c museum      ☐ d park

4. Gamal has lunch in a big

- ☐ a hotel      ☐ b restaurant      ☐ c museum      ☐ d beach

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We catch the train at the .....

القاهرة - إدارة السلام (2020)

- ☐ a station      ☐ b factory      ☐ c library      ☐ d post office

2. I go to Alexandria and play on the .....

- ☐ a beach      ☐ b factory      ☐ c umbrellas      ☐ d shopping mall

3. My uncle works in a big food ..... in Helwan.

القاهرة - إدارة السلام (2023)

- ☐ a bank      ☐ b library      ☐ c factory      ☐ d museum

4. We can keep your money safely in the

القاهرة - إدارة السلام (2023)

- ☐ a museum      ☐ b restaurant      ☐ c bank      ☐ d shopping mall

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

library - relaxing - hotel - culture

My name's Tom. I'm on vacation in Alexandria. Every year I like visiting Alexandria. I stay in a ..... near the sea. In the morning I swim on the beach. Then, I visit the Alexandria ..... to read books about the ..... and traditions. I also eat the traditional Egyptian food.

(2024)



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة (الحيزة - إدارة أبو النمرس) (2022)

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library. We also went to the cinema and watched an adventure film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- They went to Alexandria by .....  
 a bus                      b car                      c foot                      d train
- They went to the ..... in the morning.  
 a beach                      b cinema                      c library                      d restaurant

##### B- Answer the following questions:

- Where did they stay? .....
- What did they watch in the cinema? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

- mint - I - tea - drank - with. ....
- to - Ramy - wants - books - some - borrow. ....
- works - food - in - My uncle - a big - factory. ....
- a really - place - exciting - Alexandria - to visit - is. ....

(2022)

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- we love Alexandria in the summer .....
- i have lived in alexandria all my life. ....

#### 7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة اثلاثية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

##### Guiding phrases

- exciting place to visit
- favorite place is the beach

Let's visit Alexandria

مجايب آخر الوحدة



# Lesson 2

## Don't Run In The Library!



### Key vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات:



environment	البيئة	flower	زهرة
trash	قمامة	trash can	صندوق قمامة

### Other words

### الكلمات الأخرى



Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Go straight	سير بشكل مباشر
moment	لحظة	Excuse me	معذرة
everybody	الجميع	at the end	في نهاية
quietly	بهدوء	on your right	على يمينك
upstairs	الطابق العلوي	on the left	على يسارك
elevator	مصعد	on the right	على اليمين
button	زر	librarian	أمين المكتبة
loudly	بصوت عالي	tomorrow	غداً
Main Street	الشارع الرئيسي	Park Avenue	شارع الحديقة
High Street	الشارع الرئيسي	outside	بالخارج

### Instructions

### التعليمات

Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.
Don't run.	لا تجري.
Walk quietly.	امشي بهدوء.
Go into the elevator.	اذهب إلى المصعد.
Stand back.	ارجع للخلف.
Push the number one button.	اضغط على الزر رقم واحد.
Keep the environment clean.	حافظ على نظافة البيئة.
Don't jump up and down.	لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل.
Turn right / left.	استدر يميناً يساراً.



Let's visit Egypt

## Conjugation of verbs

المضارع والماضي

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضي

Present مضارع

Past ماضي

wait سظر

waited

stand يقف

stood

close يغلق

closed

choose يختار

chose

push يصط / يدفع

pushed

bring يحضر

brought

jump يقفز

jumped

lose يفقد

lost

return يعود

returned

turn يستدير

turned

cross يعبر

crossed

pick يلتقط

picked

## Study the following

1 This is the Alexandria Library.

هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.

2 Can we go inside?

هل يمكننا الدخول؟

3 Yes, you can go in. I'm going first!

نعم حسناً، دعنا ندخل، سادخل أولاً!

4 This is a very important place.

هذا مكان هام جداً.

5 How do you get to the library?

هل يمكننا الصعود الى مكتبة الطفل؟

6 The doors are closing.

الأبواب تغلق.

7 What book are you reading?

ما الكتاب الذي تقرأه؟

8 Do not eat in the library.

لا تأكل في المكتبة.

9 Bring your book back in two weeks

أعد كتابك في خلال أسبوعين.

10 Drink your water outside

اشرب مياهك في الخارج.

11 Don't use your cell phone here

لا تستخدم هاتلك المحمول هنا.

12 Do not lose your book.

لا تضيع كتابك.

13 Just cross the road.

فقط اعبر الشارع.

## 1 Imperative

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.
- لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.
- لا يأتي بعد فعل الأمر حرف جر (to).
- أولاً الأمر المثبت:

Inf. الجملة + مصدر الفعل.

- Stand up! Open the door.

- يمكن أن يأتي قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص.

- Please, pick up that trash.

- Ali, close the window.

- ثانياً الأمر المنفي:

Don't / Never + مصدر الفعل.

- Don't eat in the library, please.

- Never waste your time.

## 2 Giving directions

- للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهي:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to + اسم المكان?

معذرة، كيف يمكنني أن أصل إلى.....؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?

- Is there a park near here?

- Where is the park, please?

- للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات:

- Turn right. استدر يمينا.

- Cross the road. اعبّر الشارع.

- Go straight. اذهب بطول.



Let's visit Egypt

1 Listen and read. What are the children going to do?

استمع واقرأ، أين يذهبوا لأطفال؟

Tapescript



نص التسجيل

استمع إلى النص:



**Teacher** OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

Wow! It's **amazing** <sup>(1)</sup>. Can we go inside?

**Tarek** Wait a **moment** <sup>(2)</sup>. Is **everybody** <sup>(3)</sup> here? Yes, OK.

Let's go in.

**Ali** : I'm going first!

**Tarek** Don't run, Ali. Walk **quietly** <sup>(4)</sup>. This is a very

**important** <sup>(5)</sup> place.

**Ali** : I'm sorry.

**Tarek** Can we go **upstairs** <sup>(6)</sup> to the Children's Library?

**Teacher** Yes. Go into the **elevator** <sup>(7)</sup>. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing.

Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one **button** <sup>(8)</sup>, Tarek.

Great, thank you. We're going up!

- ١- رائع / مذهش
- ٢- لحظة
- ٣- الجميع
- ٤- بهدوء
- ٥- هاهنا
- ٦- الطابق العلوي
- ٧- مصعد
- ٨- رر



أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل أمرية.

1 book - **Choose** - a - good - to read.

2 talk - loudly, - **Don't** - please.

3 write - in - **the** - the book.

4 the book - **Return** - its place - to.



3 Read the library rules. Describe the rules with the words in the box.  
اقرأ قواعد المكتبة. اعد كتابة القواعد بالأوامر.

- 1 You should not eat in the library.  
...Don't eat in the library!
- 2 You have to bring your book back in two weeks.
- 3 You need to drink your water outside.
- 4 You cannot use your cell phone here.
- 5 You should not lose your book.
- 6 You should ask the librarian if you need help.

4 Use the words to write a list of rules for the library. Use the words in the box.  
استخدم الأوامر لإظهار ما يجب أو لا يجب عليك فعله داخل الحديقة. باستخدام كلمات من القائمة.

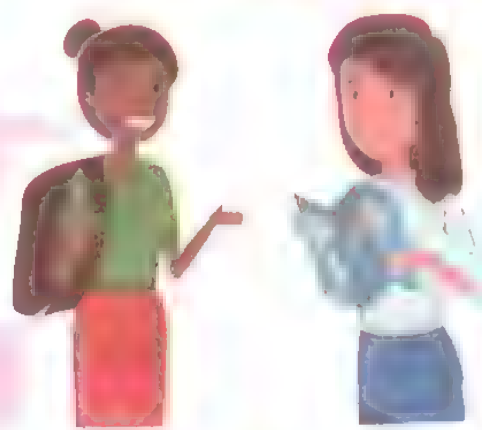
environment – park – flowers – help – trash can

- 1 Keep the environment clean.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

5 Look at the map and write a list of directions to the museum.  
انظر واقرأ. أين تريد أن تذهب الساحة.

Excuse me,  
how do I get  
to the museum  
from here?

Thank you  
very much!



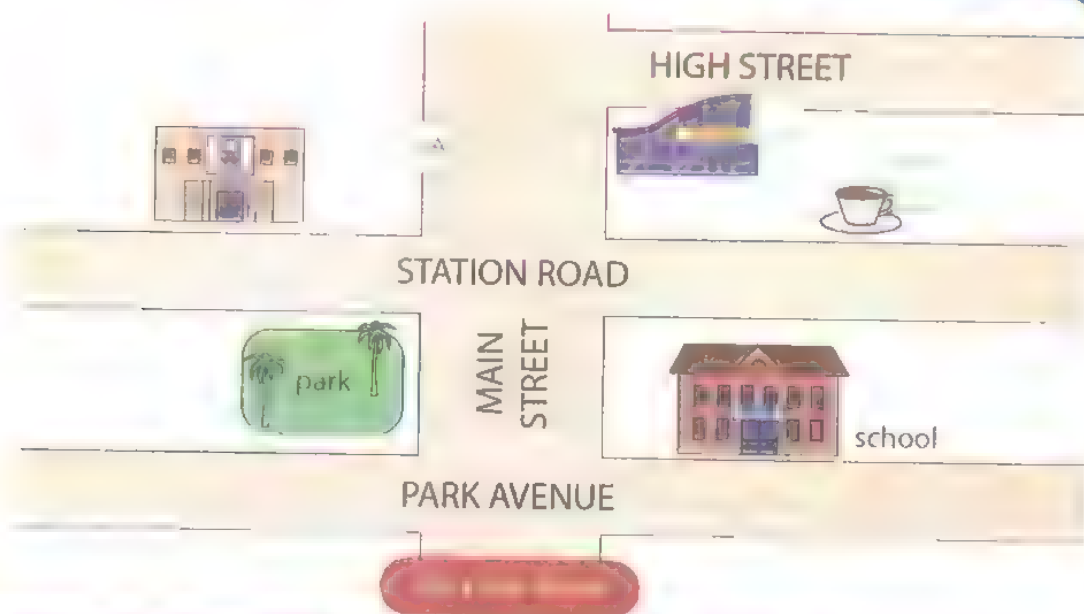
Go straight, turn left  
at the end of the road  
and the museum is on  
your right.



Listen. Write the letters on the map.

استمع . اكتب الحروف على الخريطة .

لص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



to different places with a partner.

انظر إلى الخريطة . أنت في المدرسة . اسأل وأجب عن الاتجاهات إلى أماكن مختلفة مع زميلك .



Excuse me, how do I get to the shopping mall?

Just cross the road!

# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اسمِع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- We should encourage our ..... to visit the library.  
☐ a sisters      ☐ b children      ☐ c parents      ☐ d cousins
- The children should keep the library .....  
☐ a bad      ☐ b sad      ☐ c clean      ☐ d tall
- They should ask the ..... if they need help.  
☐ a farmer      ☐ b teacher      ☐ c librarian      ☐ d mechanic
- The children shouldn't run or make .....  
☐ a cakes      ☐ b noise      ☐ c books      ☐ d pens

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

left - directions - straight - to

My friend Samy wanted to go to the museum. He had a map in his bag. He looked at the ..... on the map. He went ..... and turned ..... at the end of the road. The museum was on his left.

(2024)

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

(2024)

There are some rules you must follow when you enter a library. You should not eat in the library. You have to bring your book back in two weeks. You need to drink your water outside. You can't use your cell phone here. You shouldn't lose your book. You should ask the librarian if you need help. Don't speak loudly because people are reading here.

A Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

- You have to bring book back in ..... weeks.  
☐ a one      ☐ b two      ☐ c three      ☐ d four
- The word "here" refers to the .....  
☐ a book      ☐ b library      ☐ c phone      ☐ d water



## Let's visit Egypt

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't you speak loudly in the library?
4. What should you do if you need help in the library?
5. What shouldn't you lose in the library?

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1. is - important - place - This - a very.
2. the library - , please - eat - in - Don't.
3. go - Children's Library - Can - to - we - the?
4. your - outside - Drink - the library - water.

(2023)

(2023)

(2024)

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ (wasting) your time.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (Be) quiet in the library.
3. Go straight. It's \_\_\_\_\_ (In) the left.
4. Please, \_\_\_\_\_ (drinks) water outside.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (Doesn't) eat in the library.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (Turns) right. My school is on the left.
7. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ (talks) loudly, please.
8. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ (writing) in the books.

(2023)

(2024)

(2024)

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how can i get to the bank

### 7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

not eat in the library - walk quietly

مجاوب اخر الوحدة





## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



recognize	يتعرف على	entertain	يرفه / يسلي
lost	نائه	creature	مخلوق
strange-looking	غريب المظهر	foolish	أحمق
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	apologize	يعتذر

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



villager	قروي (أحد سكان القرية)	even	حتى
walk far	يمشي بعيداً	unkindly	بطريقة غير لطيفة
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا	crowds	عدد كبير من الناس (حشود)
road	طريق	dark	مظلم
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	enormous	هائل / كبير جداً
land	الأرض	jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
branches	أغصان فروع	rudely	بوقاحة
anyway	على أي حال	sounds	أصوات
snake	ثعبان	traders	التجار

## Conjugation of verbs

## الانحيازات

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
apologize	يعتذر	apologized		begin	يبدأ	began	
decide	يقرر	decided		fly	يطير	flew	
look at	ينظر الي	looked at		hear	يسمع	heard	
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized		know	يعرف	knew	
turn	يلتفت	turned		say	يقول	said	
walk far	يمشي بعيداً	walked far		see	يري	saw	
watch	يشاهد	watched		sell	يبيع	sold	
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended		understand	يفهم	understood	

## Study the following

- 1 ما الحيوان الذي التقى به جابي أولاً؟  
سوف أخذهم إلى السوق من أجلك.
- 2 استدار يساراً ثم يميناً.  
هل أنت تائه؟
- 3 Are you lost?
- 4 استطاع طائر أبو منجل أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
- 5 رأى جابي ثعباناً يراقبه من أغصان شجرة.  
ثم يكن يقول الحقيقة.
- 6 ذهب الثعبان إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.  
انظر إلى تلك الأذان الضخمة.
- 7 هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟
- 8 استطاع الجريوع سماع أصوات تجار السوق.  
كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان نادماً.
- 9 قرر أن ينام ، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.  
هل كان جابي على حق في التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟
- 10 Was Gabi right to behave in this way?

next day.

قرر أن ينام ، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

هل كان جابي على حق في التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟

1

استمع واقرأ.

Tapescript

استمع إلى النص



One day, a villager<sup>(1)</sup> wanted to sell his beans in the market<sup>(2)</sup>, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans<sup>(3)</sup> - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked along<sup>(4)</sup> the road<sup>(5)</sup>. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize<sup>(6)</sup> the road.

## Arabic Meaning

- ١- قروي
- ٢- سوق
- ٣- أكياس الفاصوليا
- ٤- بمحاذاة
- ٥- طريق
- ٦- يتعرف على





"Are you **lost** <sup>(7)</sup>?" called an **ibis** <sup>(8)</sup>. Gabi had never seen such a **strange-looking** <sup>(9)</sup> bird.

"No, I'm not lost," **pretended** <sup>(10)</sup> Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the **branches** <sup>(11)</sup> of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't **testing the truth** <sup>(12)</sup>

"Anyway <sup>(13)</sup>, even <sup>(14)</sup> if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said **unkindly** <sup>(15)</sup>. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to **entertain** <sup>(16)</sup> the **crowd** <sup>(17)</sup>.

It began to get **dark** <sup>(18)</sup>. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking **creature** <sup>(19)</sup>. Look at those **enormous** <sup>(20)</sup> ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the **jerboa** <sup>(21)</sup>. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi **rudely** <sup>(22)</sup>. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the **sounds** <sup>(23)</sup> of the market **traders** <sup>(24)</sup>.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was **foolish** <sup>(25)</sup> and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to **apologize** <sup>(26)</sup> and ask for their help the next day.

- ٧- نائه
- ٨- أبومبجل
- ٩- عرب المظهر
- ١٠- تطاهر
- ١١- اعصاب/ فروع
- ١٢- يقول الحفمة
- ١٣- على أي حال
- ١٤- حتى
- ١٥- بطريقة غير لطيفة
- ١٦- يسلي
- ١٧- الدشود
- ١٨- مظلم
- ١٩- مخلوق
- ٢٠- هائل/ كبير جدا
- ٢١- الخربوع
- ٢٢- بوفاحة
- ٢٣- اصواب
- ٢٤- النجار
- ٢٥- أحقق
- ٢٦- يعذر

2

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. رتب الصور.

a



b

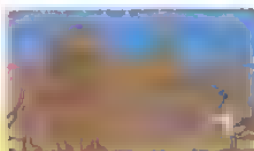


1

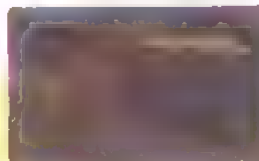
c



d



e





## Let's visit Egypt



Read the story again. Complete the sentences with words from the box.

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. اكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة في القائمة.

fly – hear – help – snake

- 1 At the start, Gabi offered to \_\_\_\_\_ the villager.
- 2 The ibis could help because he could \_\_\_\_\_ over the land.
- 3 The \_\_\_\_\_ could help because he went to the market every day.
- 4 The jerboa could help because he could \_\_\_\_\_ very well.



Read and think. Talk to your partner:

اقرأ و فكر. تحدث مع زميلك.

- 1 Why do you think that Gabi did not tell the truth to any of the animals?
  - a He didn't want anyone to know that he was lost.
  - b He was angry.
  - c He was clever.
- 2 Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
  - a Yes, because he didn't need help.
  - b No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
  - c Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.
- 3 What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
  - a You shouldn't talk to strangers.
  - b Being rude is important.
  - c Asking for help is good.



# Pronunciation

● الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

1 استمع وكرر:

/əʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين/ عرض	below اسفل	wrote كتب	grow ينمو/ يزرع
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/ يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	time وقت
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم

● أحيانا يتم نطق نفس الصوت بطرق مختلفة مثلما في كلمتي ate & eight

2 انظر للجدول. استمع مرة أخرى وقل:

1. go	2. bite	3. boy	4. make
show	right	toy	play

3 استمع وقل. اكتب الكلمات في المكان الصحيح في الجدول (أعلاه):

1. ache	2. below	3. eight	4. bake	5. coin	6. time
7. grow	8. bike	9. enjoy	10. wrote	11. write	12. point

4 اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من الجدول أعلاه:

grow - eight - ache - make

- I have a bad tooth .....
- Look! There are ..... trees in the garden.
- Let's ..... a cake for my birthday!
- Does the farmer ..... vegetables?





## CLIL: MATH

الإجابة التقديرية أو التقريبية "....." ليست الإجابة الفعلية وإنما تعد تخميناً جيداً. على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بإضافة العدد ١٧ إلى العدد ١٢ فأنت تعلم أن الإجابة هي "قريبة من" ٣٠ وليست قريبة من ٦٠. هناك بعض المصطلحات التي يمكن أن نستخدمها في اللغة الإنجليزية للتعبير عن الإجابة التقديرية يمكنك أن تقول:

- It's about ... إنه حوالي ...  
 - It's close to ... إنه قريب من ...  
 - It's around ... إنه حوالي ...  
 - It's near ... إنه قريب من ...



## 5 Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer.

انظر بسرعة وضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقريبية الصحيحة.

- ①  $34 + 47 =$  ( 60 - 80 - 120 )  
 ②  $77 + 120 =$  ( 80 - 130 - 200 )  
 ③  $338 + 336 =$  ( 480 - 680 - 980 )  
 ④  $1050 + 50 + 104 =$  ( 1000 - 1200 - 2000 )  
 ⑤  $17 + 39 + 44 + 308 =$  ( 300 - 400 - 500 )

● لتقدير حاصل جمع عددين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر يجب أن تحدد الرقم الأكبر في كل عدد. لاحظ أولاً مكونات العدد.

1	5	4	7
آلاف	مئات	عشرات	أحاد

- فمثلاً في العددين: **27 / 36**

● ننظر للرقم الأكبر في كل عدد حيث يمثل 2 عشرون في 27 وتمثل 3 الرقم 30 في 36 لذلك حاصل

جمعهما سيريد عن 50 ولن يصل إلى 70 إذا بالتقدير يصبح الناتج حوالي 60.

● إذا طلب تقدير جمع **423 / 472** انظر إلى الرقم الأكبر وهو المئات ومجموعات المئات في العددين يساوي 800

لذلك إذا طلب منك التقدير بناء على مجموع **23 / 72** بالتقريب يكون الناتج 900.

# Activities



## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

along - well - enormous - sounds

I buy everything for my mom from the market. I walk to the market because it is near my house. I walk  the road. I know the road . The market is very big. It's . I find everything in this market.

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

An old man wanted to buy food for his family, but he couldn't go. He asked his little son, Sameh, to go to the market for him. Sameh accepted and went to the market. On his way to the market, he met an old woman who was carrying heavy bags. He offered to help her, and the woman accepted and she was very happy. At the end, the woman thanked Sameh for his help and gave him some apples.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameh was a ..... boy.

☐ a bad

☐ b busy

☐ c good

☐ d sad

2. The woman gave Sameh some .....

☐ a carrots

☐ b tomatoes

☐ c oranges

☐ d apples

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

4. How did Sameh help the woman on his way?

5. Why did the woman thank Sameh?

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. telling - wasn't - He - the truth.

2. need - any - Do - help - you?

Copyright © 2024





Let's visit Egypt

3. the - beans - sacks - Give - of - me.

4. first - did - \_\_\_\_\_ - Gabi - animal - meet?

5. fly - land - The ibis - above - could - the.

(2024)

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (**Did**) you lost, Walid?

2. Gabi was foolish and he \_\_\_\_\_ (**is**) sorry.

3. Gabi offered to \_\_\_\_\_ (**helping**) the villager.

4. The villager wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ (**sold**) his beans.

(2023)

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. are you lost \_\_\_\_\_

2. retaj and Karma went to the market \_\_\_\_\_

**Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

offer help - respect them

مجاوب آخر الوحدة



# Lessons 48.5 Writing & project



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي	zoo	حديقة حيوان
relaxing	مريح	markets	أسواق
delicious	لذيذ	restaurants	مطاعم
Cairo	القاهرة	shopping malls	مراكز التسوق
London	لندن	location	موقع
New York	نيويورك	history	التاريخ
waterpark	متنزه مائي	culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
park	حديقة عامة	arts	الفنون

## Obey words



Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	bridges	كباري
theaters	المسارح	walking around	التجول
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	worry	قلق
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	plenty	الكثير
middle	متوسط / وسط	treasures	كنوز
International Park	الحديقة الدولية	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
shade	ظل	picnic	نزهة خلوية
the River Thames	نهر التايمز		

## ADJECTIVES



amazing	مذهل	fun	مرح / ممتع
beautiful	جميل	large	كبير
cool	رائع	negative	سلبى
exciting	مثير	positive	إيجابي
famous	مشهور	perfect	مثالي
fascinating	جذاب / ساحر	wonderful	رائع

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

rain      تمطر  
visit      يزور  
like      يحب  
encourage      يشجع

rained  
visited  
liked  
encouraged

see      يرى  
take      يأخذ  
choose      يختار  
feed      يطعم

saw  
took  
chose  
fed

## Study the following

- 1 This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم.
- 2 It often rains here but it doesn't matter. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم.
- 3 There are lots of fun things to do. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها.
- 4 You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب على نهر التايمز.
- 5 There are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها.
- 6 You can find delicious food from all over the world here! يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.
- 7 There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. يوجد العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة.
- 8 The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا.
- 9 You can visit the beautiful International Park. يمكنك زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.
- 10 There are some amazing treasures there. يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
- 11 I can't wait to see you in New Alamein. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.
- 12 There is a big zoo right next to the school. توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة.
- 13 We can help to feed the animals. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
- 14 There is a waterpark that is always open. يوجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا.
- 15 It's free to go in! الدخول مجاني!
- 16 There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of food. يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة.
- 17 This is our perfect town! هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

1

Read the text and choose the correct photo below.

اقرأ. أي الأماكن يصفها الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة أسفل.

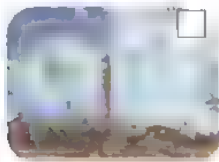
### Tapescript

استمع إلى النص.



This is one of the most <sup>(1)</sup> cities in the world. It often rains here, but <sup>(2)</sup> because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing <sup>(3)</sup>. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the <sup>(4)</sup>. You can take a <sup>(5)</sup> boat trip on the <sup>(6)</sup> and go under the <sup>(7)</sup>. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are <sup>(8)</sup> of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

- ١- منير
- ٢- لا يهم
- ٣- الحدب السباحي
- ٤- المتحف البريطاني
- ٥- مريح
- ٦- نهر الناييمير
- ٧- كناري مشهورة
- ٨- الكثير



**a** Cairo



**b** New York



**c** London

2

اقرأ النص واذكر الصفة الإيجابية أو السلبية؟ لماذا؟

انظر وأوجد. هل الصفات إيجابية أم سلبية؟ لماذا؟

- ① Find an adjective that describes the city.
- ② Find an adjective that describes the boat trip.
- ③ Find an adjective that describes the food.

**Tip**

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.





## How to write a descriptive paragraph

### كيفية كتابة فقرة وصفية

You are going to write a description of your town or city. You want to encourage people to visit it. Write notes about the good things about your town or city. Think about famous attractions:

سوف تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك أو بلدتك، وتريد تشجيع الناس على زيارتها. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة عن بلدتك أو مدينتك. فكر في معالم الجذب الشهيرة. ضع الآتي في الاعتبار:

- famous attractions

أماكن جذب شهيرة

- location - is it near a beach / river?

الموقع هل هي قريبة من الشاطئ / النهر؟

- history

التاريخ

- culture

الثقافة / الحضارة

- arts

الفنون



اقرأ الفقرة القادمة عن مدينة العلمين الجديدة. ضع خط تحت الصفات:

استمع إلى النص:



## NEW ALAMEIN

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein<sup>(1)</sup>. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle<sup>(2)</sup>



### Arabic Meaning

١- العلمين الجديدة

٢- وسط

٣- الحديقة الدولية

٤- التاريخ

٥- المركز الأثري

٦- كنوز

of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park<sup>(3)</sup>. If you want to learn about the fascinating history<sup>(4)</sup> of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center<sup>(5)</sup>. There are some amazing treasures<sup>(6)</sup> there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.







## How to make a poster about your perfect town كيف تصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية؟

Make a poster about your perfect town. Think about the types of places that you want in your perfect town. Here are some ideas

اصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية. فكر في أنواع الأماكن التي تريدها في مدينتك المثالية. إليك بعض الأفكار:

a waterpark	منزلة مائي
a park	حديقة عامة
a zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق

4

### Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل:

1. Look at the poster. Study the heading, text, and pictures.

انظروا إلى الملصق. ادرسوا العنوان والنص والصور.

2. Think about your poster. What will you include?

فكروا في ملصقكم. ماذا سيتضمن؟

3. Decide who will do what. Do your research

قررُوا من سيفعل ماذا. قوموا بالبحث.

4. Work together to make your poster. Check your work at the end

اعملوا سويًا لصنع الملصق. تأكدوا من عملكم في النهاية.

استمع إلى النص:



### Our perfect town

Heading



In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!

Pictures

Text

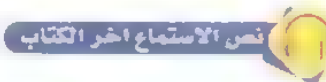
النص



# Activities

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Nadia lives in a small

☐ a village

☐ b town

☐ c city

☐ d hotel

2. Nadia lives with her .....

☐ a friends

☐ b parents

☐ c uncles

☐ d aunts

3. Nadia likes to play with her ..... after school.

☐ a toys

☐ b friends

☐ c parents

☐ d cousins

4. There is a ..... next to Nadia's house.

☐ a park

☐ b waterpark

☐ c museum

☐ d hotel

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**most - fun - Tower - bridge**

I'm Hossam. I live in Cairo. It's a big city. It's one of the ① ..... exciting cities in the world. There are lots of ② ..... things to do. You can visit the Cairo ③ ..... It's very high.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (2020) ش.م.إدارة الوقت

New Alamein is a beautiful city. There are many exciting things in it. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it is hot. The beautiful beach is 14 kms long. There is also a **large** lake in it. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. You can visit the Archaeological Center if you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area. There are some amazing treasures there.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**large**" means .....

☐ a clean

☐ b tiny

☐ c small

☐ d big

2. New Alamein is on the ..... of the sea.

☐ a beach

☐ b desert

☐ c park

☐ d lake



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- What can you see in the Archaeological Center? .....
- How long is the beach of the city? .....
- Summarize the paragraph in one sentence. ....

**4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- you - do - What - in - can - New Alamein? .....
- any - amazing - Are - treasures - there? (2024)
- find - here - You - delicious - can - food. ....
- one - cities - of - This is - the most - exciting. ....

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- where do you live, tarek? .....
- Dalia and mona went to the park .....

**6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة إيشائه من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

(2024)

Composition

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

most exciting - different restaurants



# Review



## Places



bank  
بنك



factory  
مصنع



monument  
نُصب تذكاري / أثر



library  
مكتبة



shopping mall  
مول تجاري



square  
ميدان



station  
محطة



museum  
متحف



market  
سوق



beach  
شاطئ



supermarket  
سوبر ماركت



hotel  
فندق



restaurant  
مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
shopping	التسوق
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت
originally	أصلاً / في الأصل
on vacation	في إجازة
apologize	يعتذر
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح
delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن

New York	نيويورك
waterpark	منتزه مائي
recognize	يتعرف على
lost	نائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
entertain	يرفّه / يسلي
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون
environment	البيئة



## ADJECTIVES

### صفات



exciting	مثير
famous	مشهور
fascinating	رائعة
fun	ساحر جذاب
cool	رائع

negative	سلبي
positive	إيجابي
perfect	مثالي
wonderful	رائع
large	كبير

## Other words

### كلمات أخرى



traditions	تقاليد
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
branches	أغصان فروع
crowds	الحشود
enormous	هائل
jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
rudely	بوقاحة

traders	التجار
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
International Park	الحديقة الدولية
Archaeological center	المركز الأثري
shade	ظل
it doesn't matter	لا يهم
treasures	كنوز
New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة

## Conjugation of verbs

### صيغ المضارع

### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

serve	يقدم طعام
remind	يذكر
borrow	يستعير
own	يملك
push	يضغط / يدفع
turn	يستدر
cross	يعبر
hurry	يسرع
recognize	يتعرف على
pretend	يتظاهر
encourage	يشجع

#### Past ماضٍ

served
reminded
borrowed
owned
pushed
turned
crossed
hurried
recognized
pretended
encouraged

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

find out	يكتشف
show	يبين
stand	يقف
choose	يختار
write	يكتب
lose	يفقد
feed	يطعم
take	ياخذ
fly	يطير
hear	يسمع

#### Past ماضٍ

found out
showed
stood
chose
wrote
lost
fed
took
flew
heard



## 1 Imperative الأمر

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.
- لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر،
- لا يأتي بعد فعل الأمر حرف جر (to).
- أولاً الأمر المثبت،

بأى الجملة + مصدر الفعل Inf

- Do your homework.

● يمكن أن يأتي قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المذهب أو اسم شخص،

- Please, open the window.

- Ali, close the window.

- ثانياً الأمر المنفى،

بأى الجملة + مصدر الفعل Inf + Don't / Never

- Don't play in the street.

- Never come to school late.

## 2 Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

● للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهي:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to + اسم المكان؟

- معذرة، كيف يمكنني أن أصل إلى.....؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?

- Is there a park near here?

- Where is the park, please?

● للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات،

- Turn right. استدر يمينا.

- Cross the road. اعبر الشارع.

- Go straight. اذهب بطول.



Write a text of about  
THIRTY (30) words.

## Lesson 1

### A visit to Alexandria

- 1 Last week was my holiday. I went to Alexandria with my family. It's an exciting place to visit. My favorite place is the beach. We went to the beach and had a great time. I swam and played football with my brothers.

## Lesson 2

### Library rules

- 2 At the library, we should respect the rules. We should put the books on the shelf. We should walk quietly. We should not eat in the library. We should not use our cell phones there. We should not talk loudly.

## Lesson 3

### Helping others

- 3 We should be helpful. We should offer help to anyone carrying heavy bags. We should also help old people. If a person is poor and needs money, we should give him money. If a person is hungry, we should give him food.

## Lessons 4 & 5

### Lesson 4

- 4 London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. There are some amazing tourist attractions. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. There are plenty of different restaurants and you can eat delicious food from all over the world.

### Lesson 5

- 5 I like my city, Alexandria very much. It's very clean and beautiful. The people in the city are very friendly. There are many places to visit. There are big markets, shopping malls, schools and hospitals. I love my beautiful city.

# Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالازهر الشريف

## A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my ..... (brothers - teachers - friends)
2. Alexandria is a big ..... (town - city - village)
3. There's even a ..... (beach - river - lake)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

Library - What - reading - going

- A : Where are the children ① ..... ?
- B : They are going to Alexandria ② .....
- A : ③ ..... are they doing?
- B : They are ④ ..... stories.

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ واحب عن الأسئلة:

Uncle Mahmoud has a big house with a beautiful garden outside the house. He has no children, but he has two pets. He likes keeping pets and he looks after them very well. He has a dog called "Lion" and a cat called "Pos Pos". Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every day. He is a kind man.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Does uncle Mahmoud have children?
2. What does uncle Mahmoud like keeping?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Uncle Mahmoud has a beautiful garden ..... the house. (outside - inside - under)
4. He has a dog called ..... (Tiger - Lion - Fox)
5. Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every ..... (a - week - year)

## D- Vocabulary and Structures

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Alexandria is a big .....

- a** farm                      **b** park                      **c** city

2. Come and ..... lunch with us.

- a** having                      **b** had                      **c** have

3. I visited Buckingham ..... last year.

- a** Palace                      **b** Museum                      **c** Park

4. We ..... keep the environment clean.

- a** can't                      **b** should                      **c** shouldn't

5. I saw beautiful ..... at the museum.

- a** monuments                      **b** cusines                      **c** malls

**5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. be - tomorrow - Don't - late.

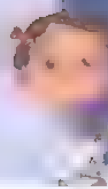
2. your - in - money - Keep - a bank.

3. do - How - the - I - get to - station?

4. there - Is - a factory - here - near?

5. Library - is - the - This - Alexandria.





# Test

اختبر



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

النص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1 Hisham goes to Alexandria with his

☐ a toys

☐ b family

☐ c friends

☐ d books

2. Alexandria is a very ..... city.

☐ a big

☐ b tall

☐ c small

☐ d old

3. Hisham stays in a hotel near the .....

☐ a beach

☐ b train station

☐ c park

☐ d school

4. Hisham has lunch at the .....

☐ a party

☐ b restaurant

☐ c beach

☐ d station

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: ..... do you get to school? B: Go straight on. (2023)

☐ a How

☐ b When

☐ c What

☐ d Who

2. Don't use your ..... phone in the library.

☐ a call

☐ b cell

☐ c book

☐ d toy

3. .... left, the supermarket is on the corner. (2023)

☐ a Catch

☐ b Turn

☐ c Use

☐ d Work

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

international - beach - hot - middle

New Alamein is a city in north of Egypt. There are many exciting things to do.

The city is on the ① , so you can visit the cool sea when it's ②

This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large green lake right in the

③ ..... of the city.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Hi friends! My name is Mai and I live in Ras El-Bar. It isn't a very big town near the sea. About 10,000 people live here. There are about thirty shops in Ras El-Bar and there are three supermarkets. In my town, you can get everything you need. There are five banks and a post office. There is a police station and a library. I usually go to the market with my mom.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of this passage is about ...  
☐ a Mai's family    ☐ b Ras El-Bar    ☐ c the sea    ☐ d the shops
- Mai lives in a ..... town.  
☐ a small    ☐ b big    ☐ c large    ☐ d cute

B- Answer the following questions:

- How many people live in Ras El-Bar? .....
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to? .....
- Who did Mai usually go to the market with? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- quiet - in - You - be - should - the library. (2024)
- tourist - Egypt - many - has - attractions. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- ..... (Didn't) talk loudly, please.
- How do I ..... (got) to the museum? (2023)

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لـ:

- which place would you like to visit .....
- There s a hospital near here ..... (2024)

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrase

many places - beautiful city

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

## Being responsible

## Vacations

## العطلات



## Objectives of the Unit

## أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about vacations.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثاً ويكتب عن العطلات.
2. Think about environmental responsibility.  
- يفكر الطالب في المسؤولية البيئية.
3. Practice using prepositions of time.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
4. Listen to a conversation.  
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة.
5. Learn about different types of triangles.  
- يتعلم الطالب عن الأنواع المختلفة من المثلثات.
6. Read and say words with the "th" sound.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها صوت th.
7. Think about my perfect vacation.  
- يفكر الطالب في عطلة مثالية.
8. Write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.  
- يكتب الطالب تدوينة يومية عن أفضل يوم في العطلة.
9. Make a poster for a vacation destination.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق عن وجهة الإجازة.

## Key vocabulary



hotel  
فندق



suitcase  
حقيرة سفر



swimming pool  
حمام سباحة



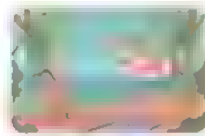
high-rise building  
ناطحة سحاب



theme park  
ملاهي



ticket  
تذكرة



beach  
شاطيء



camera  
كاميرا



city  
مدينة



museum  
متحف



airport  
مطار



sunglasses  
نظارة شمس



tourist  
سائح



passport  
جواز سفر

## Other words

luckily

لحسن الحظ

Singapore

سنغافورة

flight

رحلة جوية

vacation

إجازة / عطلة

footprints

آثار القدم

daughter

ابنة

husband

زوج

gardens

منطقة حدائق

cloud

سحابة

degree

درجة الحرارة

view

منظر

island

جزيرة

son

ابن

floor

طابق / دور في مبنى

vanilla

فانيليا

hotel room

حجرة فندقية

### Important Phrases

a business trip	رحلة عمل	in the middle of	في منتصف
a boat trip	رحلة (نزهة) بالقارب	by the Bay	بجوار الخليج
from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	a really special place	مكان مميز جدا

### ADJECTIVES

wonderful / lovely	رائع	busy	مزدحم
comfortable	مريح	huge	ضخم

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
arrive يصل	arrived	spend يقضي (وقت)	spent
visit يزور	visited	fly يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
relax يستريح	relaxed	take photos يلتقط صور	took photos
pack يحزم (حقائب)	packed	leave يغادر	left
		sleep ينام	slept

### Study the following

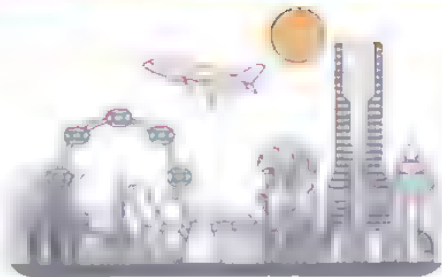
- They took a business trip traveling around the world.  
- إنهم مسافرون حول العالم في رحلة عمل.
- Luckily, we had a lovely hotel room.  
- لحسن الحظ حصلنا على غرفة رائعة في فندق.
- There is a beautiful beach and we can see the beach.  
- المنظر جميل ويمكننا أن نرى الشاطئ.
- There is a swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!  
- يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق.
- It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived.  
- لم نستغرق الكثير من الوقت لكي نمر من المطار عندما وصلنا.
- We went straight away.  
- حصلنا على حقائب السفر فوراً.
- There are many high-rise buildings.  
- يوجد الكثير من ناطحات السحاب.
- There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.  
- يوجد الكثير من الحدائق والأشجار لكي نجلس تحتها ونستريح.
- We visited the museum of ice cream!  
- زرنا متحف المثلجات.
- I hope you are all well.  
- أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعاً بخير.
- Now I have found our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!  
- الآن يجب أن أجد تذاكري وجواز سفري وأحزم حقائبي مرة أخرى.

# 1. Listen and read

استمع وأقرأ

## Where are Uncle Hani and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Singapore City

Tapescript

استمع إلى النص



To: Samiax@mail.com

Subject: My trip

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore<sup>(1)</sup>! It's hot here - about 36°C<sup>(2)</sup>. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel<sup>(3)</sup> room. We're on the 42<sup>nd</sup> floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool<sup>(4)</sup> on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight<sup>(5)</sup> from India took about six hours, but it was tiring<sup>(6)</sup> and we both slept. It didn't take long to check in<sup>(7)</sup> the airport when we arrived - we got our luggage<sup>(8)</sup> straight away<sup>(9)</sup>.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of skyscrapers<sup>(10)</sup>, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay<sup>(11)</sup> is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle<sup>(12)</sup> of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park<sup>(13)</sup>. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the ice cream<sup>(14)</sup> shop. I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Dubai<sup>(15)</sup> tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets<sup>(16)</sup> and passports<sup>(17)</sup> and our suitcases again!

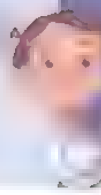
Love

Nadia

### Arabic Meaning

- ١- دولة سغافوره
- ٢- درجات حرارة
- ٣- فندق
- ٤- حمام سباحه
- ٥- رطله حوضه
- ٦- مريح
- ٧- بحر عبر
- ٨- حقائب سفر
- ٩- على القور
- ١٠- باطحات سحاب
- ١١- خليج
- ١٢- في منتصف
- ١٣- ملاهى
- ١٤- محف
- ١٥- دوله الياباني
- ١٦- بذاكر
- ١٧- جوارب سفر
- ١٨- بحرم (حقائب)





# Activities

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

أضغ الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Osama went to \_\_\_\_\_ last month.  
☐ a Cairo ☐ b Dubai ☐ c Alexandria ☐ d Luxor
- There are many \_\_\_\_\_ buildings.  
☐ a short ☐ b high-rise ☐ c fair ☐ d small
- Osama went on a \_\_\_\_\_ trip.  
☐ a car ☐ b boat ☐ c bike ☐ d taxi
- Osama went on rides at the theme \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a building ☐ b park ☐ c house ☐ d wheels

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- There is a \_\_\_\_\_ park in my town. الإسكندرية - إداره الحمرك (2024)  
☐ a same ☐ b theme ☐ c boat ☐ d thing
- When you need to travel around the world, you need a \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a password ☐ b passport ☐ c museum ☐ d message
- Tourists usually stay in \_\_\_\_\_ on vacation.  
☐ a museums ☐ b zoos ☐ c suitcases ☐ d hotels
- I like going to the club and swim in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a city ☐ b swimming pool ☐ c hotel ☐ d airport
- When we travel, we put our clothes in a \_\_\_\_\_. (2023)  
☐ a passport ☐ b ticket ☐ c suitcase ☐ d camera

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: (2024) القليوبه

travel - trip - happy - sad

Today, my sister received an email. It's from her husband, Alaa. He is on a business \_\_\_\_\_ traveling around the Arab world. She was very \_\_\_\_\_ to know Alaa's news. This week he is in Kuwait. Next week, he will \_\_\_\_\_ to Qatar to complete his business there and then return to Egypt.



Help your child deal with such questions. تساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



#### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. vacation - on - take - do - you - What?

(2024)

2. you - can - it - believe?

3. a boat - went - trip - We - on.

4. you - well - I - are - all - hope.

5. our tickets - have to - and - I - find - passports.

6. got - at - hotel - a lovely - room.

(2024)

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we will fly to Japan tomorrow

(2024)

2. do Amr and tamer go to Singapore?

#### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجااب آخر الوحدة

My trip to Singapore

Guiding phrases

a lovely hotel - lots of high rise buildings



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



check in	يسجل وصوله للفندق	diary entry	تدوين في المفكرة اليومية
traditional	تقليدي	wander	يتجول
day trip	رحلة نهائية (في النهار)	handicrafts / crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
diary	مفكرة يومية	stalls	أكشاك

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



leaflet	منشور / كراسة دعائية	meeting	مقابلة
tour	جولة	skin	جلد
mud	وحل / طين	chance	فرصة
exploring	استكشاف	destination	جهة الوصول
culture	حضارة / ثقافة	midnight	منتصف الليل
trading center	مركز تجاري	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
rug	سجادة	archaeological	أثري
on the way	في الطريق	arts and crafts	فنون وحرف
idea	فكرة	museum	متحف
home	وطن	Jordan	الأردن
the Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني	Jordanian	أردني
Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان	the Dead Sea	البحر الميت
Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر	appointment	موعد

## Conjugation of verbs

## المضارع والمضارع

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
check in يصل للفندق	checked in	buy يشتري	bought
head out يتوجه إلى	headed out	drive يقود (سيارة)	drove
float يطفو	floated	write down يسجل / يدون	wrote down
walk around يتجول في	walked around	go back يعود	went back
discover يكتشف	discovered	sell يبيع	sold
remind يُذكر	reminded		

## Study the following

- 1 Enjoy some free time in the city. - استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة.
- 2 Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. - اليوم نستمتع بجولة في عمان.
- 3 Today we head out of the city for a day trip. - اليوم نتوجه إلى خارج المدينة في رحلة نهائية.
- 4 You will find lots of local Jordanian culture. - ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.
- 5 No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. - لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.
- 6 There is so much salt in this sea. - يوجد الكثير جدا من الملح في هذا البحر.
- 7 We leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. - نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحا لنقود سيارة لمدة ٣ ساعات عائدين إلى عمان.
- 8 We will stop on the way for lunch. - سنتوقف في الطريق للغداء.
- 9 It only took an hour to reach our destination. - استغرقت ساعة فقط للوصول لوجهتنا.
- 10 Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. - اشترى الكثير من الناس مصنوعات يدوية أردنية تقليدية من الأكشاك.
- 11 Today was the best day ever! - كان اليوم افضل يوم على الإطلاق.
- 12 We had the chance to wander through the streets. - اتاحت لنا الفرصة وتجولنا خلال الشوارع.
- 13 There is so much salt in the sea that you are able to float on the water. - يوجد ملح كثير جدا في البحر يمكنك من الطفو على الماء.

A diary

مفكرة يومية

is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.

A diary entry

تدوينة في المفكرة

is a piece of writing in a diary.

## Grammar

## Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

● نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6<sup>th</sup>, 2010.

on

● نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.
- We play basketball **at** lunchtime / **at** night.
- **at** midnight

at

● نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم

- We visit our cousins **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- They arrived **in** the morning.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

3

in

● لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11<sup>th</sup>.



Read, think and say: What country would you like to visit? اقرأ وافكر وقل: ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

اقرأ وافكر وقل: ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to visit Zambia because I want to see elephants and lions.



استمع وأقرأ المنشور. كم عدد المتاحف التي يمكنك زيارتها في هذه الرحلة؟

Topescript



استمع إلى النص:



## DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8

**Day 1:** Arrive in Amman and **check in**<sup>(1)</sup> to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a **traditional**<sup>(2)</sup> Jordanian dinner in the evening.



**Day 2:** Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous **Amman Citadel**<sup>(3)</sup> before exploring the **Roman Amphitheatre**<sup>(4)</sup> and the **Archaeological Museum**<sup>(5)</sup>. After a late lunch in a local restaurant spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful **markets**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Day 3:** Today we head out of the city for a **trip**<sup>(7)</sup> to **As-Salt**<sup>(8)</sup>. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional **shops**<sup>(9)</sup> to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and **visit**<sup>(10)</sup> the **city**<sup>(11)</sup> of As-Salt as Jordan's important **center**<sup>(12)</sup>.

**Day 4:** No visit to Jordan is **complete**<sup>(13)</sup> without a trip to the **Dead Sea**<sup>(14)</sup>. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea **mud**<sup>(15)</sup>, which is very good for your skin.

**Day 5:** After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the **airport**<sup>(16)</sup> at 5 pm.

### Arabic Meaning

- ١- يسجل وصول فندق
- ٢- قفليدي
- ٣- قلعه عمان
- ٤- المدرج الروماني
- ٥- المتحف الأثري
- ٦- أسواق
- ٧- رحلة بهارية
- ٨- مدينة السلط (الاردن)
- ٩- فيون وحرف
- ١٠- يكتشف
- ١١- تاريخ
- ١٢- مركز تجاري
- ١٣- مكتمل
- ١٤- البحر الميت
- ١٥- طيب
- ١٦- مطار



3 Do you know? اقرأ تدوينة نهلة اليومية. أي يوم تصف؟ كيف تعرفه؟

Thursday, October 6<sup>th</sup>

استمع إلى النص



Dear Diary,

Today was the best day (1) I love (2) to do with history- I always go to the museum at home, so today was a (3) day for me. The (4) wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to (5) our (6). I listened to music on the way and the time went (7) quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to (8) the streets and (9) people bought traditional Jordanian (10) from the (11). I bought a lovely colorful (12). Saleh (our (13)) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- على الاطلاق
- ٢- اي شيء
- ٣- ممتع
- ٤- جولة بالأتوبيس
- ٥- يصل الى
- ٦- جهة الوصول
- ٧- الى حد ما
- ٨- يتحول عبر
- ٩- عديم
- ١٠- مصنوعات يدوية
- ١١- أكشاك
- ١٢- سجادة
- ١٣- مرشد ساعي

4 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in:

أكمل الجمل بـ at/on/in

- 1- Dad is a baker. He works ..... the mornings.
- 2- We go to the club ..... Saturdays.
- 3- Does our next class start ..... 2 pm?
- 4- Grandma was born ..... 1962.
- 5- Reem's birthday is ..... December 4<sup>th</sup>.

5 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in:

أكمل الفقرة بـ at/on/in

① ..... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed ② ..... 4 o'clock ③ ..... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm ④ ..... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city ⑤ ..... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel ⑥ ..... about midnight.

6 Listen. Match the lines with the speakers in the dialogues.

استمع. وصل الاوقات مع المتحدثين وانشطتهم (في الصفحة القادمة)

استمع الى تيمس

Tapescript

نص الاستماع



**Narrator : 1**

**Boy 1** : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

**Ayman** : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

**Narrator : 2**

**Girl 1** : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

**Amira** : Yes please, that sounds good!

**Narrator : 3**

**Dad** : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

**Fareed** : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

**Dad** : Yes, that's right.

**Fareed** : OK, thanks Dad.

**Narrator : 4**

**Mom** : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

**Talia** : OK, Mom, I'll be ready.

**Narrator : 5**

**Sherif** : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

**Mom** : Oh, yes, that's fine, Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

**Narrator : 6**

**Sara** : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

**Mom** : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

1



Ayman

a- on the weekend



2



Amira

b- at 11 am



3



Fareed

c- in the morning



4



Talia

d- on Thursday



5



Sherif

e- in July

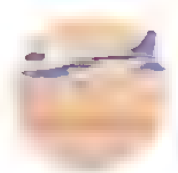


6



Sara

f- at 5 pm



# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. \_\_\_\_\_ visit many places in Egypt every year.  
☐ a Friends      ☐ b Tourists      ☐ c Students      ☐ d Children
2. Tourists always want to check in a \_\_\_\_\_ hotel.  
☐ a tall      ☐ b small      ☐ c comfortable      ☐ d high
3. Tourists try traditional \_\_\_\_\_ food.  
☐ a Chinese      ☐ b American      ☐ c Egyptian      ☐ d French
4. Tourists like to go to Luxor and Aswan in \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a summer      ☐ b fall      ☐ c winter      ☐ d spring

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

special - history - trip - colorful

Yesterday, I went on a school trip. I went to the Egyptian Museum. I love learning about **1** \_\_\_\_\_. Yesterday was a **2** \_\_\_\_\_ day. I went by bus. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It was a good **3** \_\_\_\_\_. It was a great day.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. football - Ali - Mondays - on - plays.

(2024)

2. stop - for lunch - We - on the way - will.

3. salt - is - the Dead Sea - There - in - so much.

(2023)

4. visit - you - would - like to - What?



#### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأمواس:

1. It rains ..... (on) winter.

الدقهلية - إدارة المصلحة (2024)

2. My sister's birthday is ..... (at) March.

(2024)

3. We play basketball ..... (on) lunchtime.

4. We have a party ..... (in) August 15th.

5. They flew to Egypt ..... (at) the evening.

6. We had science lessons ..... (in) Thursdays.

7. My father went to the hospital ..... (for) midnight.

(2023)

8. My flight to London landed ..... (on) nine o'clock.

(2024)

9. Heba visited her grandma ..... (in) the weekend.

10. I walk to school ..... (by) the morning.

(2024)

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. i spent hours in the park

2. how many museums can you visit on this trip

#### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

What you do at different times

Guiding phrases

go swimming - enjoy my day

# Lesson 3

## Al-Azhar Park

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



go on vacation  
a bit low

يذهب في إجازة  
حزين أو محبط قليلاً

bench  
awesome

مقعد طويل  
مدهل

### Other words



picnic  
suddenly  
playground  
together  
show  
year  
else  
طعام مخصص للنزهة / نزهة  
فجأة  
ملعب  
معاً / سوياً  
عرض (مسرحي)  
عام / سنة  
آخر / إضافي

cousin  
past  
grass  
meal  
beach  
whole group  
ابن أخته / عم / أعمه / أخ / الحالة  
مازأب عذر  
عشب / حشائش  
وجبة  
شاطئ  
مجموعة كاملة

### ADJECTIVES



possible  
interesting  
beautiful  
ممکن  
ممتع / شيق  
جميل

cool  
wonderful  
fantastic  
لطيف / بارد  
مدهش  
رائع

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

phone  
agree  
shout  
arrive  
seem  
يتصل تليفونياً  
يوافق  
يصيح  
يصل  
يدلو

phoned  
agreed  
shouted  
arrived  
seemed

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

come  
sit  
find  
think  
know  
يأتي  
يجلس  
يجد  
يعتقد  
يعرف

came  
sat  
found  
thought  
knew



## Study the following

- 1 It was a hot summer. - كان صيفًا حارًا.
- 2 School was over and he wanted to go on vacation. - الدراسة انتهت وأراد (سليم) أن يذهب في إجازة.
- 3 His cousin Sherif was away at the beach. - ابن عمه شريف كان بعيدًا بالشاطئ.
- 4 His family usually went on vacation. - عادة ما تذهب عائلته في إجازة.
- 5 They had to stay in Cairo. - كان يجب عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.
- 6 I'm feeling a bit low. - أشعر بالحزن قليلاً.
- 7 I want to be at the beach. - أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ.
- 8 Can you come to the playground with us? - هل من الممكن أن تأتي معنا إلى الملعب؟
- 9 Why are you in the city? - لماذا أنت في المدينة؟
- 10 Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. - جلست أمي على منبعا وأسمعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في المتنزه.
- 11 I think this is a fantastic place. - أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.
- 12 I can see there's a show next week. - أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع القادم.
- 13 It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome! - بدا أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة كان رائعًا.

## 1. Read the text and write the missing words in the gaps.

استمع واقرأ القصة. لماذا شعر سليم بأنه أفضل في آخر القصة؟

### Transcript

استمع إلى النص.



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation <sup>(1)</sup>. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't <sup>(2)</sup>. Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to <sup>(3)</sup> in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?" "I'm feeling a <sup>(4)</sup>. - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.



- ١- يذهب في إجازة
- ٢- ممكن
- ٣- يقيم/يمضي
- ٤- حزين قليلاً

"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."

"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it **sounds**<sup>(5)</sup> interesting!"

Seleem's mom **agreed**<sup>(6)</sup> to take them to the park. She made a **plan**<sup>(7)</sup>, so when **they** arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green **grass**<sup>(8)</sup> and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came **running past**.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I **thought**<sup>(9)</sup> you were at the beach!"

"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a **visit**<sup>(10)</sup> of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the **playground**<sup>(11)</sup> with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went **together**<sup>(12)</sup> to the playground. Mom sat on a **bench**<sup>(13)</sup> and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon.

"I can see there's a show next week. Let's **come back**<sup>(14)</sup> with Dad, see the show and have a **meal**<sup>(15)</sup> at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It **seemed**<sup>(16)</sup> that summer in the city would be **awesome**<sup>(17)</sup>!

- ٥- يبدو
- ٦- وافق
- ٧- صعد، استرجه
- ٨- عيب
- ٩- اعتمد
- ١٠- مجموعة، كاسه
- ١١- ملعب، فناء
- ١٢- معاً
- ١٣- مقعد طويل
- ١٤- يعود
- ١٥- وجبة
- ١٦- بدا
- ١٧- مذهل

## 2 Read again and circle the correct answer

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Seleem wasn't at school because

- ☒ a he was ill.
- ☐ b he was on vacation.

2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?

- ☒ a Because his grandma was ill.
- ☐ b Because his dad had a new job

3- Where did they eat in the park?

- ☒ a on the grass
- ☐ b at the restaurant

4- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?

- ☒ a friends from school
- ☐ b Sherif, Seleem's cousin

5- What did Seleem and his mom decide to do the following week?

- ☒ a come back with Seleem's friends
- ☐ b come back with Seleem's dad

# Pronunciation

- سوف نتعرف في هذا الدرس على الفرق بين الاصوات **θ** و **ð** . لنطق حرفي والرمز الصوتي الدال عليها.

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

- لكي تنطق هذه الاصوات يجب أن تضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العليا.
- هذا الصوت /θ/ يشبه حرف (ث) في اللغة العربية وهو صوت لا تهتز به الاحبال الصوتية وهذا معناه أنك تشعر بهواء على يدك إذا قربتها من فمك عند خروج هذا الصوت.
- أما الصوت /ð/ يشبه حرف (ذ) في اللغة العربية ولا يوجد هواء عند خروجه ولكن تشعر باهتزاز في الاحبال الصوتية.

1

استمع وقل هذه الكلمات،

/θ/	/ð/
thing	هؤلاء
Thursday	أولئك
think	هذا
three	مع
Earth	أم
author	

2

Then listen and check

قل هذه الكلمات. ضفهم في الجدول الاتي حسب نطق حرفي (th) كما بالمثل.

bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - clothes - mouth - leather

th /θ/	th /ð/
bathroom	father



### 3. Directed write: Add the correct suffix to the word in brackets.

انظر واكتب. أضف النهاية الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين القوسين:

هناك بعض النهايات الشائعة التي تضاف للكلمات لتكوين الصفة مثل النهايات (ive / ous) في الجدول الآتي:





Word origin	أصل الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
poison	سم	poisonous	سام
act	يتحرك	active	نشط
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
expense	تكلفة	expensive	غالي الثمن
enormity	ضخامة / كبير	enormous	ضخم
danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير
create	يبدع	creative	مبدع

- 1- Be careful! That snake is ..... (poison)
- 2- Ali swims and runs. He's very ..... (act)
- 3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very ..... (fame)
- 4- His watch is very ..... (expense)

## MATH

Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles. Let's learn more about triangles below.

- يأتي الكثير من السياح ليزوروا مصر وواحدة من أكثر الأماكن شهرة هي أهرامات الجيزة ، كل جوانبها عبارة عن مثلثات.
- هيا نتعلم المزيد عن المثلثات بالأسفل.

An equilateral triangle		مثلث متساوي الأضلاع (أضلاعه الثلاثة متساوية)
A right angle triangle		مثلث قائم الزاوية (به زاوية قائمة ٩٠°).
An isosceles triangle		مثلث متساوي الساقين (به ضلعين متساويين)
A scalene triangle		مثلث مختلف الأضلاع (كل أضلاعه مختلفة في القياس)



11

Vacations

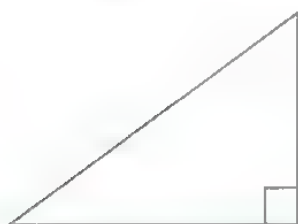
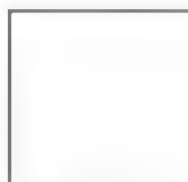
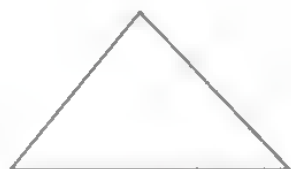


Look and read. Color the triangles.

انظر وأقرأ ولون المثلثات

**A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.**

المثلث هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد ذو ثلاثة أضلاع.



2

Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

2- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures  $90^\circ$ .

3- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.



4- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

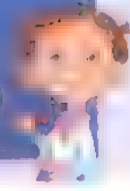


Look. Circle the correct triangle type.

انظر وضع دائرة حول النوع الصحيح للمثلث.

right angle /  
scalene2 isosceles /  
equilateral3 right angle  
/ isosceles4 equilateral /  
scalene

# Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع أختار الكتاب



- Hani can do a lot of activities on  
☐ a vacation      ☐ buildings      ☐ parks      ☐ roofs
- Hani goes to Alexandria in .....  
☐ winter      ☐ fall      ☐ summer      ☐ spring
- They stay in a ..... in front of the sea.  
☐ beach      ☐ hotel      ☐ house      ☐ park
- They make sandcastles on the .....  
☐ road      ☐ street      ☐ beach      ☐ hotel

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- It was a wonderful city. It was .....  
☐ bad      ☐ ugly      ☐ awesome      ☐ sad
- She went to the park, she ..... a picnic (2024) .....  
☐ did      ☐ played      ☐ made      ☐ stayed
- Everyone knows Adel. He is very .....  
☐ active      ☐ famous      ☐ expensive      ☐ poisonous
- Hana sat on a ..... in the park. She enjoyed the beautiful plants.  
☐ bench      ☐ city      ☐ school      ☐ hotel
- Nabil bought a very ..... car last week. (2024) .....  
☐ poisonous      ☐ expensive      ☐ fame      ☐ enormity

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات من الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- feeling - I'm - low - a bit. ....
- you - are - in - the - Why - city? ....
- to - Park - go - Al-Azhar - Let's. ....
- wanted - Hadi - to - vacation - on - go. ....
- thought - I - were - the beach - you - on. ....

اسموس - إدارة أدفو (2024)

## 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mrs Mona is a (fame) teacher in our school. (معلمة مشهورة)

2. I can't buy this mobile. It's very (expense). (مكلف)

3. Mr Hany can do a lot of work. He is very (act). (مفعل)

4. Don't go near the lions. They are very (danger) animals. (خطير)

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. seleem felt very happy

2. can you come to the park with us

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إسبائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

## Your visit to Al-Azhar Park

## Guiding questions

1- When did you go to Al-Azhar Park?

2- Who did you go with?

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



Morocco	المغرب
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش (المغرب)
France	فرنسا
Paris	مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا)
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل (باريس)
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)

French	اللغة الفرنسية / شخص فرنسي
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
diary	مفكرة يومية

## Other words كلمات أخرى

museum	متحف
formal language	اللغة الرسمية
local dishes	أكلات شعبية
chef	طاه / طبّاخ
perhaps	ربما
a bit	قليلاً
At the end of ...	في نهاية ...
shopping	التسوق
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية

stall	كشك
sand dunes	كشّان رملية
metal	معدن
smell	رائحة
snorkeling	الفطس
turtles	سلاحف
still	مازال
home	وطن / موطن
wandering	التجول

## ADJECTIVES صفات

perfect	رائع
hungry	جائع
special	مميز / خاص
traditional	تقليدي

crowded / busy	مزدحم
private	خاص
brightly-colored	ذو ألوان زاهية
cultural	حصاري / ثقافي



# Conjugation of verbs

التصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

try	يحاول
wait	ينتظر
visit	يزور
remind	يُذكِّر
include	يشتمل

tried
waited
visited
reminded
Included

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

understand	يفهم
speak	يتكلم
keep up	يجارى

understood
spoke
kept up

## Study the following

1 We saw some famous sights from the boat.

- رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية المشهورة من القارب.

2 The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.

- برج آيفل طويل جدا ومصنوع من المعدن.

3 The Louvre is a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings.

- اللوفر هو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة.

4 The French people were very kind.

- كان الفرنسيون طيبون جدا.

5 When I spoke English, they understood me!

- عندما تحدثت باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني.

6 At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant.

- في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم للأكلات الفرنسية.

7 There's so much to do.

- يوجد أشياء كثيرة لتفعلها.

8 We went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum.

- ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف (متحف جميل).

9 I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home.

- أحبها لأنها تذكرني قليلا بحديقة الأزهر في وطني (بلدي مصر).

10 The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

الرائحة

الروائح الآتية من الأكشاك الموجودة بالسوق جعلتني جائع.

- 11 We go to the beach to go snorkeling. نذهب للشاطئ لكي ممارس رياضة الغطس.
- 12 We race through the sand dunes in beach buggies. - تتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية بالعربات الشاطئية.
- 13 Can you keep up? - هل تستطيع أن تجاري (السباق)؟
- 14 Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. - تعلم عن حضارة المدينة في الماضي من خلال رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.
- 15 You can see the chef making the local dishes. - يمكنك أن ترى الطاهي (الطباخ) يُعد الأكلات الشعبية.



### Writing a diary

- When you write a diary, you should... عندما تكتب مفكرة يومية ينبغي أن
- Write the date. تكتب تاريخ اليوم.
  - Start with "Dear Diary". تبدأ ب: مذكراتي العزيزة.
  - Describe the places / events. تصف الأماكن والأحداث.
  - Say how you felt. تقول ما شعرت به.

### 1 Look at the city of Marrakech. Match the places to the descriptions.

اقرأ التدوينات اليومية (في الصفحة القادمة). صل الناس بالأماكن.



1 Marrakech, Morocco



2 Eiffel Tower, Paris, France

استمع إلى النصص:



Reem

July 21<sup>st</sup>

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous <sup>(1)</sup> from the boat, like the Louvre<sup>(2)</sup>, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings<sup>(3)</sup>, and the Eiffel Tower<sup>(4)</sup>. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal<sup>(5)</sup>. I tried to speak French<sup>(6)</sup>, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood<sup>(7)</sup> me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

- ١- معالم سياحية
- ٢- متحف اللوفر
- ٣- لوحات
- ٤- برج إيفل
- ٥- معدن
- ٦- اللغة الفرنسية
- ٧- فهم

Amira

April 5

Dear Diary,

I had a really good day today. I went to a museum that is really old and has a lot of interesting things. It was still very busy and I saw a lot of people. I saw a lovely garden with a lot of flowers. It reminds me of the garden in my home. I also saw a lot of people who were from the market stalls. I don't wait to go back there tomorrow!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مارال
- ٢- مزدحم
- ٣- حديقة ملجوريل بالمعرب
- ٤- يذكر
- ٥- جامع العما
- ٦- سوق
- ٧- روائح
- ٨- اكشاك
- ٩- ينتظر

TIP!

Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينه يومية جديدة.

2

Read the text and write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اقرأ. ضع (✓) أمام ما يتم تنفيذه من الجمل عند كتابة تدوينه يومية.

When writing a diary:

- 1- you should start with "Dear Diary". ☐
- 2- you should write about how you felt. ☐
- 3- you should use formal language. ☐
- 4- you need to remember that other people will read it. ☐
- 5- you should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me". ☐

### 3 Read and circle

اقرأ وضع دائرة

Read the two diary entries again. Who ...

اقرأ التدوينتين اليومية مرة أخرى. اختر، ريم، أو أميرة.

- |  |      |       |
|--|------|-------|
| 1- went on a boat?                                   | Reem | Amira |
| 2- thought somewhere was very crowded?               | Reem | Amira |
| 3- went somewhere that was like a place at home?     | Reem | Amira |
| 4- saw something beautiful made of metal?            | Reem | Amira |
| 5- said that the smell of the food made them hungry? | Reem | Amira |
| 6- ate something made of potatoes for dinner?        | Reem | Amira |

### 4 Think of a place where you did something special. Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words:

فكر في يوم عندما فعلت شيئاً مميزاً. اكتب تدوينته اليومية من حوالي ٣٠ - ٤٠ كلمة.

### Remember:

- Write the date.
- Start with "Dear Diary".
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

### Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private. However, do you think it's right to read the diaries of people from the past? Why? Why not?

يجب عليك ألا تقرأ يوميات الآخرين. لأن هذه اليوميات خاصة بهم ولكن هل من الصحيح أن تقرأ اليوميات الخاصة بالآخرين من الماضي في رأيك لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟

5

What do you want to go on this vacation? (ما الذي تريد أن تذهب في إجازة؟)

اقرأ. هل تريد أن تذهب في إجازة؟ ١٢ ١١ ١٠ ٩ ٨ ٧ ٦ ٥ ٤ ٣ ٢ ١

## My perfect vacation. (إجازتي المثالية)

استمع إلى النصوص:



## Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to **snorkeling**<sup>(1)</sup>. Swim with the **turtles**<sup>(2)</sup> and **brightly-colored**<sup>(3)</sup> fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a **picnic**<sup>(4)</sup> and a good book.



- ١- يذهب للعطس  
٢- سباحة  
٣- راهي / ذات ألوان زاهية  
٤- طعام للبرهة

## Day 2

Today we **race**<sup>(5)</sup> through the sand dunes in **beach buggies**<sup>(6)</sup>! It's fun and fast! Can you **keep up**<sup>(7)</sup>?



- Arabic Meaning  
٥- يتسابق  
٦- عربات شاطئية  
٧- يواصل

## Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and **wandering through**<sup>(8)</sup> the markets. **Perhaps**<sup>(9)</sup> buy some traditional **handicrafts**<sup>(10)</sup> to take home.



- Arabic Meaning  
٨- التحول عبر  
٩- ربما  
١٠- مصنوعات يدوية

## Day 4

Learn about the city's **cultural**<sup>(11)</sup> past with a **trip**<sup>(12)</sup> to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the **local dishes**<sup>(13)</sup>.



- Arabic Meaning  
١١- ثقافي  
١٢- رحلة قصيرة  
١٣- أطباق شعبية



# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eiffel Tower is made of

- ☐ a wood      ☐ b metal      ☐ c plastic      ☐ d glass

2. We go to the beach to go .....

- ☐ a snorkeling      ☐ b shopping      ☐ c sleeping      ☐ d wandering

3. We will race today. Can you ..... up?

- ☐ a make      ☐ b walk      ☐ c keep      ☐ d swim

4. The smells coming from my mother's cooking make me

- ☐ a private      ☐ b hungry      ☐ c kind      ☐ d busy

5. Many people ..... through the streets in Khan Al-Kalili

- ☐ a jump      ☐ b wander      ☐ c run      ☐ d fly

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

I'm Walid. I'm from Aswan I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I like going to Cairo by train. I want to go to the Cairo Tower. It is so tall and made of metal. I want to go to the Egyptian Museum. I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. It has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I can't wait to go there soon!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo Tower is made of .....

- ☐ a carton      ☐ b paper      ☐ c mud      ☐ d metal

2. The underlined word "It" refers to .....

- ☐ a Cairo      ☐ b the Cairo Tower  
☐ c Egyptian Museum      ☐ d Al-Azhar Park

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Walid want to have?

4. Where will Walid learn about Egypt in the past?

5. How does Walid go to Cairo? .....



# 11

## Vacations

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - Can - up - keep?

نصحت - دارة - كبر - بعد (2024)

2 the - on - went - I - river

3. some - saw - sights - famous - Magda

4. metal - Eiffel - The - made of - is - Tower.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (have) such a cool day yesterday.

أمرت - بعد - (2023)

2. Be careful! That snake is (poison).

3. Everyone knows Soha. She is very (fame).

4. Reem's birthday is (at) January 4th.

5. (At) Saturdays, I visit my grandma.

استغرقت - أمرت - تصيد (2024)

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you want to go on vacation

تلقى - لموسم - أمرت - استغلتها (2023)

2. The french people were very kind

### 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

run through the sand

Guiding phrases

sand dunes - beach buggies

# Review



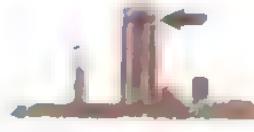
## Key vocabulary



hotel  
فندق



swimming pool  
حمام سباحة



high-rise building  
ناطحة سحاب



theme park  
ملاهي



ticket  
تذكرة



museum  
متحف



airport  
مطار



tourist  
سائح



passport  
جواز سفر

traditional	تقليدي
day trip	رحلة في وقت النهار
diary	مفكرة يومية
go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
a bit low	حزين قليلا
diary entry	تدوينة يومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts	مصنوعات بدوية
stalls	أكشاك

bench	مقعد طويل
awesome	مذهل
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
Morocco	دولة المغرب
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)

## Other words كلمات أخرى

luckily	لحسن الحظ
flight	رحلة جوية
vacation	إجازة / عطلة
footprints	آثار القدم
banks	ضفاف
leaflet	منشور
tour	جولة

chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
trading center	مركز تجاري
citadel	قلعة
suddenly	فجأة

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

relax يستريح

relaxed

spend يقضي (وقت)

spent

arrive يصل

arrived

fly يطير / يسافر جوا

flew

check in يسجل وصول

checked in

take photos يلتقط صور

took photos

head out يوجه إلى

headed out

drive يقود (سيارة)

drove

float يطفو

floated

leave يغادر

left

walk around يتجول حول

walked around

discover يكتشف

discovered

## Grammar

## Prepositions of time

## حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة

- I don't go to a school **on** Fridays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6<sup>th</sup>, 2010.

on

نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- The train to Aswan leaves **at** 8 pm. / **at** lunchtime / night / midnight

at

نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضاً أوقات اليوم.

- My birthday is **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- **In** the afternoon / evening

in

لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم

- My birthday is **on** October 11<sup>th</sup>.

## Pronunciation

⊙ لاحظ الفرق بين الأصوات /θ/ و /ð/:

The sounds /θ/		The sounds /ð/	
thing	شيء	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		



Write a text of about  
THIRTY (30) words.

## Lesson 1

### My trip to Singapore

- 1 I traveled to Singapore with my parents on holiday. My father was on a business trip. We stayed in a lovely hotel. There are lots of high rise buildings and many parks and gardens to sit under and relax.

## Lesson 2

### What you do at different times

- 2 On Thursdays, I can do my things at different times. I go swimming at seven am. I go to the park at twelve am. Then, I go to the museum at two o'clock. I enjoy my day.

## Lesson 3

### Your visit to Al-Azhar Park

- 3 I live in Cairo. On the summer holiday, I visit Al-Azhar Park. We make a picnic with my friends. We sit under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoy our food. We play football, too. It's a fantastic place.

## Lessons 4&5

### A race through the sand

- 4 I like racing through the sand dunes in beach buggies. It's fun and fast. I go with my friends. It's exciting and safe. I go there every week. I enjoy my time there. This is my perfect vacation.

## Test - Unit 11

### Things to do on vacation

- 5 On vacations, I learn new things. My father took us to the Egyptian Museum. We saw fantastic statues there. The statues are made of gold or rocks. We knew many things and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there again.



# Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

## A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went to the theme park with my ..... (father . friend . cousin)
2. We went on different ..... (rides . bikes . boats)
3. We took lot of photos with my ..... (camera . phone . tablet)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

snorkeling - sandcastles - would - beach

- A: Where ① ..... you like to go?
- B: I want to go to the ② .....
- A: Do you want to go ③ ..... ?
- B: Yes. I want to make ④ ..... , too.

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Hamza visited the zoo last weekend. He went with his family by bus. He saw a lot of animals there. He fed the elephant and the giraffe. He took photos with them. He liked his vacation.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Hamza go last weekend?
2. How did Hamza go to the zoo?

**B - Choose the correct answer:**

3. Hamza fed the \_\_\_\_\_ and the giraffe. (lion · elephant · deer)
4. Hamza took \_\_\_\_\_ with the elephant and the giraffe. (carrots · lakes · photos)
5. Hamza liked his \_\_\_\_\_ (father · school · brother)

## D- Vocabulary and Structures

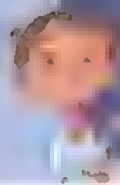
**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** احرص الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My birthday is ----- Monday.  
**a** in **b** at **c** on
2. I put my clothes in a -----.  
**a** museum **b** suitcase **c** picnic
3. This watch is very -----.  
**a** active **b** expensive **c** creative
4. My family wanted to go on -----.  
**a** suitcase **b** vacation **c** passport
5. I get up ----- 7 am.  
**a** in **b** on **c** at

**5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

اقرأ واعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. was - How - flight - your?
2. suitcase - She's - her - packing.
3. perfect - This - my - vacation.
4. fly - When - they - from - did - Cairo?
5. go - swimming - at - I - o'clock - seven.



# Test

Unit 11

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اختر الإجابة

1. Ramy and Adam are .....

a brothers

b cousins

c students

d friends

2. Ramy and Adam are in primary .....

a 5

b 4

c 6

d 3

3. Ramy likes playing football after school on .....

a Monday

b Thursday

c Saturday

d Wednesday

4. Adam goes ..... on Friday.

a cycling

b swimming

c shopping

d sleeping

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mom sat on a ..... in Al-Azhar Park.

(2024) .....

a bench

b beach

c ticket

d flight

2. We ..... through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

a race

b relax

c find

d put

3. You can have fun and go on different rides at the .....

a sand dunes

b theme park

c museum

d airport

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

checked - warm - degrees - traditional

Last year, we visited Amman. We went there by plane. The plane landed at 4 pm. It was about 26 <sup>1</sup> ..... and I was surprised that it was <sup>2</sup> ..... in October. We went to our hotel and <sup>3</sup> ..... in. It was a comfortable hotel.

## Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Reda. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most famous botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The Spring Festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. The Spring Festival usually starts in .....

☐ a July

☐ b March

☐ c May

☐ d June

2. Reda will have a ..... vacation.

☐ a bad

☐ b useless

☐ c boring

☐ d good

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Reda want? .....

4. Where is the Orman Garden located? .....

5. What does the Orman Garden have? .....

## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. does - ..... - land - flight - our?

2. snorkeling - ..... - going - the weekend - on - are.

## Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was born ..... (in) August 15th.

2. Amman is a really busy ..... (on) night.

## Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you visit Al-Azhar Park at night .....

2. we have to pack our suitcases ..... (2024)

## Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Things to do in Amman

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

Egyptian museum - fantastic statues



## English Reader

## A Fantastic Family Adventure

## عائلة رائعة ترحل



## Objectives of the Unit

## أهداف الوحدة

1. To read and understand a story. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
- To enjoy reading in English. ٢ - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
- To identify characters in a story. ٣ - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات قصة.
- To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. ٤ - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والفردات في قصة.
- To review the story and check understanding. ٥ - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمها.
- To put events from a story in order. ٦ - يترقب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
- To examine the characters in a story. ٧ - يختبر الطالب هي شخصيات القصة.
3. To retell the story. ٨ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.



## Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة



Dad

الاب



Mom

الام



Ramy

رامي



Malak

ملك



Grandpa

الجد



Grandma

الجددة

الجددة



Uncle Youssef

العم يوسف

## Picture Dictionary

قاموس الصور

استمع إلى المفردات والنصوص،



**dinosaur** الديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

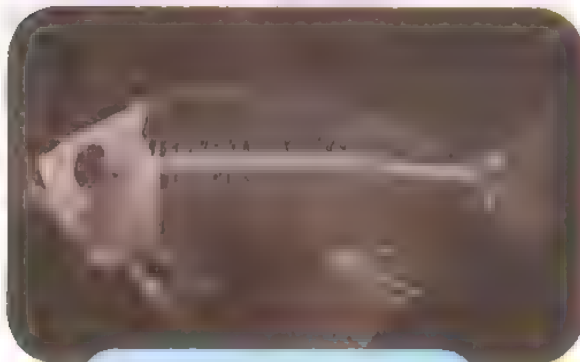
كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



**bones** العظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

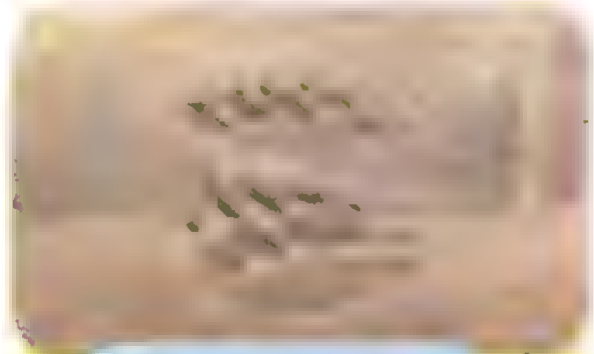
جسمنا به عظاماً عديدة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



**skeleton** هيكل عظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

تمتلك الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي داخل أجسادهما.



**tracks** آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات أثراً على الأرض التي ساروا عليها.



**binoculars** المنظار  
نظارة مكبرة / معظمة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

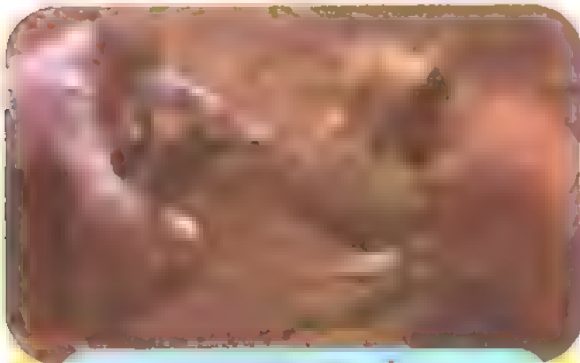
تحب النظر إلى الأشياء البعيدة بالمنظار الخاص بها.



**ibex** الوعل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعل هو حيوان صحراوي مثل الغزال.



**archaeologist** عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض

للعثور على أشياء من سنوات عديدة ويدرسها.



**archaeological dig** حفرة أثرى

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

ينشئ الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس معاً

للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.

## The Reader

### القصة

استمع الى نص القصة



Ramy and Malak are playing in the park. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

يلعب رامي وملاك في الحديقة. فجأة، يناديهم والده من البيت.

"يا أولاد، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة في الجريدة!"

يركض الاطفال الى الداخل ليرى القصة. يقول لهم والدهم، "انظروا! لقد وجدوا شيء مذهل بالقرب من قرية جدكم وجدتكُم."

"What is it. Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يسأل رامي "ما هذا يا أبي؟ إنه يبدو مخيفاً!"

يقول له والدهم، "لا تقلق، إنه ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل ديناصور. مجموعة من علماء الآثار وجدته. وعمك يوسف واحد من هؤلاء."

مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحد من هؤلاء.

محفف	مذهل	حريدة	ففاء
علماء آثار	ديناصور	هيكل عظمي	5- skeleton

2



That's **awesome** , Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"

"Yes, that's right, Malak "says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"

"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really **interesting** job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.

"Yes, he has. And his work is **important** too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

هذا هو العمل المثير للاهتمام الذي يقوم به دكتور يوسف  
 في المتحف الوطني في القاهرة. إنه يعمل على اكتشاف  
 الحفريات القديمة في الصحراء المصرية. هذا العمل  
 مهم جداً لأنه يساعدنا على فهم التاريخ القديم.



3



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

في وقت لاحق، من ذلك المساء يجلس رامي وعائلته العشاء.

يقول الأب: "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتك في المرة القادمة؟"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an \_\_\_\_\_ to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ there. Why don't we walk that together?"

"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

يقول رامي: "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة!"

تقول أمي: "توجد ممسي (درب) طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير فيه معاً؟"

تقول ملك: "نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أحب الطبيعة."

مغامرة

ممشى (درب) طبيعي



4



"Ramy! Malaki!" Grandma calls. She is so  to see her grandchildren<sup>(2)</sup>.

"I have prepared your favorite things -  and ! Come inside and eat."

نادى الجد "رامي! ملك!" انها متحمسه للغاية لرؤية أحفادها.

"أعددت أشياؤكم المفضلة - فطير وساي بالشعاع! تعالوا الى الداخل وساتولوا الطعام."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

يقول الجد لامي وابي "مرحباً، انه من الجيد رؤيتكم."

يقول ابي "من الرائع ان يكون هنا. نريد غدا ان نأخذ الاولاد الى الممشى (الحرب) الطبيعي."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

يقول الجد "ممتاز. هناك الكثير ليراه في منطقتنا. انه مكان جميل."



5



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses.

في صباح يوم التالي، الجميع سعيدون وجاهزون لـ المشي على المسار الطبيعي. إنهم يرتدون القبعات واللاوشحة ونظارات الشمس.

They have snacks and water in their **backpacks** . Mom has some **binoculars** too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare** animals.

لديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه في حقائب ظهرهم. أمي لديها أيضًا بعض المقرانات. إنها تريد أن تنظر في الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في مكان جميل جدًا في مصر مع أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات النادرة.

6



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

اليوم حار جميل، ليس حاراً جداً. إنه يوم رائع للمشي. هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل ويرون الأغنام وبعض الحمال.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone." she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."

مالاك سعيدة جداً لأنها تحب الحيوانات. "يرجى المشي بهدوء وباحتياظ الجميع." تقول. "إذا كنا هادئين، يمكننا أن نرى ثعلب الفنك، أو غزال دوركاس، أو ربما قطة الرمال."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks in the sand.

Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

الأسرة تستمر في المشي على المسار. رامي يرى آثار الحيوانات في الرمال. Dad يأخذ صورة من ثعلب الفنك. Mom ترى العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالمسار.

1. perfect

مثالي

نبات الصبار

ثعلب الفنك

4. dorcas gazelle غزال دوركاس

أثار اقدام



7



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone. I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"

She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

الطريق. يرى بعض الاشكال الغريبة بداخلها.

"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones ..."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

"يقول رامى انظر! ما هذه الاشياء في الصخور يا ابي؟"  
يقول الأب لا اعرف. تبدو مثل العظام.

نحن قريبون جداً من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه هيكل العظام الديناصور.

Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course," says Dad.

Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

يكون عظام ديناصور.

يقول الأب نعم بالطبع.

يلتقى به في منزل جدتي على العشاء.





Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في المساء بعد ذلك، يوضح الأب لعم يوسف الصور ويوضح لرامي المكان على الخريطة. يسأل عم يوسف العائلة أن يذهبوا معه في اليوم التالي.



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

اليوم التالي، يذهبون مرة أخرى على المسار. يجدون صخور رامي ويلاحظ عم يوسف بعناية.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are **certainly** very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that **doesn't exist** now."

إن العظام ليست عظام الديناصور في الصخور، يقول عم يوسف. "لكنهم بالتأكيد قديمين جداً. إنهم ربما من نوع من الغزلان القديمة التي لم تعد موجودة الآن."

Ramy is **disappointed** because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

رامي يشعر بالأسف لأن العظام ليست من الديناصور. لكن عم يوسف يقول "أفعلت جيداً رامي لإيجادهم! من المهم أن تأخذ وقتاً للنظر في العالم من حولنا ومراقبة الأشياء - تماماً مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل تريدون جميعاً أن تأتيوا إلى الحفريات لترى هيكل الديناصور الخاص بي؟" "نعم بالتأكيد، عم يوسف!" يقول رامي وملاك.

السيف ورؤيه الهيكل العظمي للديناصور الذي وجدته؟  
نعم بالتأكيد، عم يوسف!





"Here it is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"

"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."

"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of **climate change**." says Uncle Youssef.

يقول العم يوسف "ها هو، ما رأيكم؟"

يقول رمي "واو! مذهبي! إنه مدهش أن نعتقد أنه عثر على عظام حيوان قديم في الصحراء. إنه مدهش أن نعتقد أنه كان يعيش في الصحراء قبل ملايين السنين. إنه مدهش أن نعتقد أنه كان يعيش في الصحراء قبل ملايين السنين. إنه مدهش أن نعتقد أنه كان يعيش في الصحراء قبل ملايين السنين."

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is **dry** and the wind can **blow** away the sand. Things that were under the **ground** come to the **surface**". That's good for archaeologists but bad for the **planet**<sup>(5)</sup>."

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة والرياح يمكن أن تهب الرمال بعيداً. الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تأتي إلى السطح. هذا جيد للباحثين في الآثار، لكنه سيء للكرة الأرضية."

تغير المناخ	جاف	تمصف / تهب (للرياح)
سطح	كوكب	



"Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef." says Ramy"

"It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"

في وقت لاحق يسعد الجميع للعودة الى المنزل.

اصبح عالم اثار. ياله من عمل رائع!

"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef.

"Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

شبيثا. "نقول ملك "بمكنا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"

"Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom." It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

نقول الام "شكرا على كل الطعام اللذيذ. كان من الرائع أن أراكما مرة أخرى."

نقول الحدة "شكرا لك عزيزي. نعالى لربارنا قريباً."



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

تسأل الام في السيارة "اذن، هل استمتعتم برحلتنا؟"

يقول رامى "نعم، اعتقد انها كانت رائعة." تقول ملك "وانا ايضا!"

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our **environment** <sup>(1)</sup>."

"Yes, that is how you can <sup>2</sup> interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

تسأل الاب "ماذا تعلمتم منها في رايكم؟"

يقول رامى "تعلمت انه من المهم ان ننظر حولنا بعناية وان نلاحظ الاشياء في بيئتنا."

يقول الاب "اسمع على حق يا اولاد، اجسستم!"



## Characters Vocabulary

اكتب أسماء الشخصيات من القائمة تحت الصور:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1



2



3



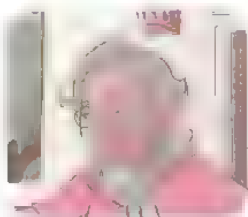
4



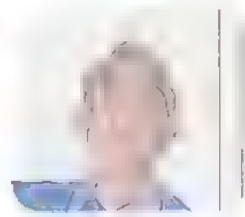
5



6



7



Write the true (✓) or false (✗) sentences in your notebook

اقرأ. قرر إذا كانت الجملة صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ.

1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper

2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house.

( )

3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer.

( )

4. Mom loves looking at birds.

( )

5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones.

( )

6. They go to Uncle Youssef's office.

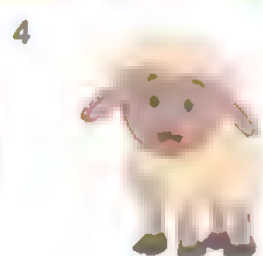
( )



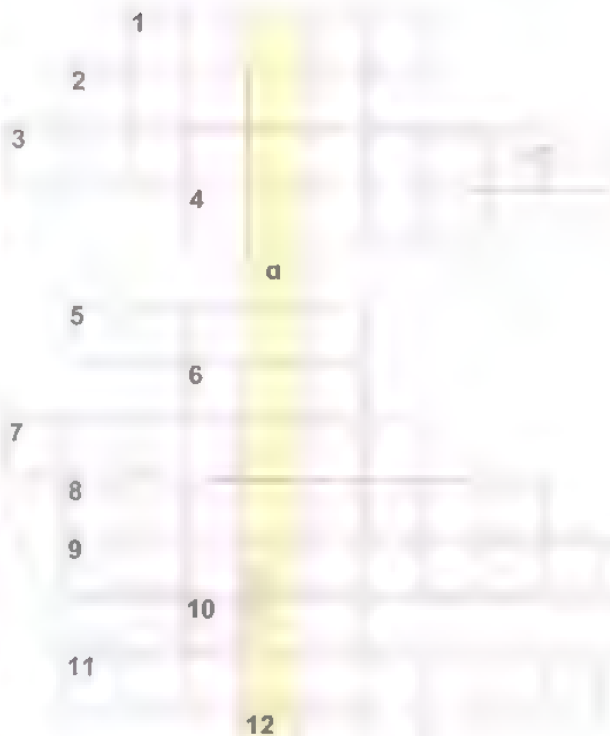


3 Complete the puzzle with words from the story. What's the word in yellow?

أكمل اللغز بكلمات من القصة. ما هي الكلمة باللون الأصفر؟



mint.....



fennec .....



archaeological .....



dorcas .....

# Lesson 3

## Events in the story

1

أنظر ورقم بالترتيب،

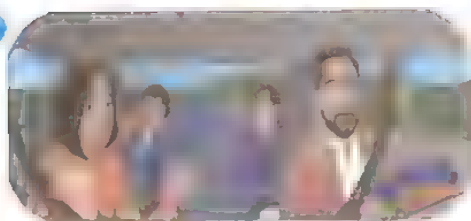
a



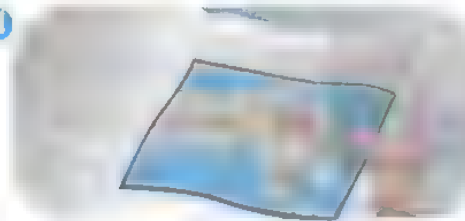
b



c

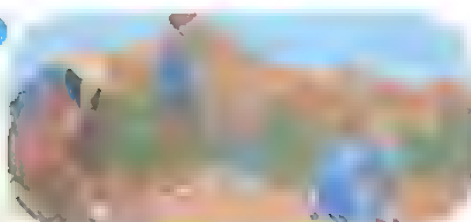


d



1

e



f



2

اقرأ وصل لتكوين جمل،

A

- 1 Dad reads a story
- 2 The children's grandparents
- 3 Ramy finds old bones
- 4 Uncle Youssef invites
- 5 Ramy wants to be

B

- a. live near the archaeological dig.
- b. the family to the dig.
- c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.
- d. an archaeologist in the future
- e. in some rocks near the trail.

3. Work with a partner. Read the story carefully and look at the pictures. Choose the scene you like best and write a short story about it. What is your favorite scene? Why?

اعمل مع زميلك. اعد سرد القصة بالنظر إلى الصور في الممرين ١ واستخدم الاجابات في الممرين ٢. ما هو مشهدك المفضل؟ لماذا؟

4. Read the story and choose the correct words to complete the story. Write the words in the spaces provided. Then, read and complete the story with the words in the list.

ibex - rocks - next - trail - invites - dig - fun - Dad -  
skeleton - Grandma

At home, \_\_\_\_\_ reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur \_\_\_\_\_ . He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological \_\_\_\_\_ . At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they visit \_\_\_\_\_ , who lives near the dig. The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the \_\_\_\_\_ day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature \_\_\_\_\_ and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the \_\_\_\_\_ and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an \_\_\_\_\_ . He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also \_\_\_\_\_ them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ .

5. Work with a partner. Discuss the questions

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة :

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
2. What information can archaeology give us?
3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?



## Objectives of Review 4

## أهداف المراجعة

### Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 10 - 12

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

### Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To evaluate progress in Units 10 - 12.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب في استيعاب الوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To read postcards and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب بطاقات بريدية ويجيب عن أسئلة.

1. Listen and check. أكتب الحروف الناقصة. استمع وتأكد.

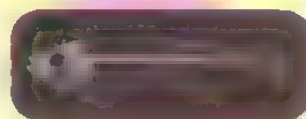
استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب



1- di - osa - r



2- pas - p - - t



3- ske - - to -



4- t - ac - s



5- bin - cu - ars



6- s - - tcase



7- ar - hae - - ogist



8- st - t - - n



أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الجمل:

Wear your jacket, please.  
Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.  
Go straight to the end of the road

### Conversation 1

**Rania** Excuse me, where's the shopping mall, please?  
....., and then turn left.

### Conversation 2

..... It's really cold outside.  
..... You're right

### Conversation 3

..... I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach!  
**Hazem:** ..... We'll have a great time!

## 3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of wonderful **paintings** / **factories** are in the museums
2. Tourists like to see the amazing **monuments** / **beaches** in Luxor.
3. We will take a **relaxing** / **fixing** boat trip on the River Nile.
4. I like the **bad** / **delicious** food my mother usually cooks

## 4 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
I will send you another email	<input type="radio"/> a. inside the school library.
My brother usually	<input checked="" type="radio"/> b. through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.
Tourists like to wander	<input type="radio"/> c. when I arrive in London.
Don't make noise	<input type="radio"/> d. does his homework carefully.



# Lesson 2

## Units 10 , 11 & 12

### 1 Listen and complete with the correct sound:

استمع وأكمل بالصوت الصحيح،

1. ba - - room

2. enj - -

3. wr - t -

4. gr - -

5. pl - -

6. mo - - er

### 2

اقرأ. وصل الأماكن (٣-١) بالبطاقات البريدية (C - D).

1. a busy city

2. a desert

3. a village

a. Hi Magdy,

I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.

Bye!

Ali

b. Hello Rabab,

How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around a fire. (It gets really cold here at night). We sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.

See you next week.

Sahar

c. Hi Ghada,

We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

See you soon,

Randa



ضع دائرة على الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. We flew to Alexandria **at / in / on** Monday.
2. Our flight leaves **at / in / on** 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city **at / in / on** the summer.
4. We are going to the park **at / in / on** the afternoon.
5. Her cousins usually visit her **at / in / on** July.

are incorrect:

ضع (✓) على الجمل الصحيحة. واعد كتابة الجمل الغير صحيحة:

1. I went to ride the train from Cairo Airport. ☒
- I went to ride the plane from Cairo Airport.
2. Shahinaz needed a big suitcase to put all her clothes in for the next trip. ☐
3. The hotel we stayed in had large, sunny rooms. ☐
4. I couldn't see the birds in the sky well, so I used my tickets. ☐
5. The library had lots of dinosaur skeletons and bones for us to see. ☐

Write a postcard of 30 words to a friend. Think about:

تخيل انك في اجاره في احد الاماكن في التمرين ٢. اكتب بطاقة بريدية من ٣٠ كلمة لصديق:

where you are -----

how you traveled -----

who you are there with -----

what you did yesterday -----

why you like the place -----





# Test

10 31 32

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

لنص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. I went to ..... in summer.

- ☐ a Luxor                      ☐ b Alexandria                      ☐ c Cairo                      ☐ d Aswan

2. I stayed in a .....

- ☐ a house                      ☐ b park                      ☐ c hotel                      ☐ d street

3. I saw a lot of ..... in the hotel.

- ☐ a friends                      ☐ b tourists                      ☐ c students                      ☐ d players

4. I wore my swimming suit and .....

- ☐ a shoes                      ☐ b sunglasses                      ☐ c umbrellas                      ☐ d shirts

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are a lot of ..... in the museum.

- ☐ a factories                      ☐ b beaches                      ☐ c paintings                      ☐ d stations

2. We use ..... to look at things in the distance.

- ☐ a tracks                      ☐ b bones                      ☐ c binoculars                      ☐ d skeleton

3. Don't make ..... inside the school library.

- ☐ a cakes                      ☐ b noise                      ☐ c trip                      ☐ d painting

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cold - tent - fire - stars

I'm Hazem. I go to the desert every year. I usually set up our ① ..... . It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand. At night, we sit around a ② ..... . It gets really ③ ..... here at night.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Libraries are important places. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep it clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

##### A Choose the correct answer from a b c or d

- The underlined word "it" refers to the .....  
☐ a information      ☐ b library      ☐ c book      ☐ d librarian
- We should be ..... in the library.  
☐ a noisy      ☐ b amazed      ☐ c quiet      ☐ d bored

##### B Answer the following questions:

- Why do we go to the library? .....
- Who should you ask for help in the library? .....
- Where should we put the books in the library? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صح الكلمات من اليسار الصحيح بكوين جملاً:

- raced - sand - We - dunes - through. (2024)
- sees - tracks - Ramy - in - animals' - the sand.

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب لصيغة الكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- ..... (Keeps) quiet in the library.
- We're flying to Morocco (in) January 25<sup>th</sup> (2023)

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

صح علامات الترقيم التالي:

- will your next class start at 10 pm .....
- it s a perfect day for walking. ....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة استثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

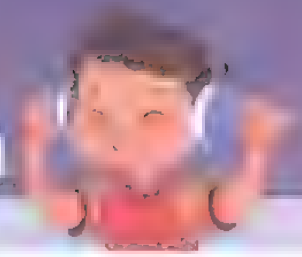
is in Cairo - fantastic place

Al-Azhar Park



# Student's Book Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كتاب الطالب



## Unit 7

### LESSON 1

**Narrator:** Listen and write the words you hear, page 36.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1- wood | 2- flood | 3- book  |
| 4- cook | 5- tool  | 6- blood |

## Unit 9

### LESSON 3

**Narrator:** Listen again and write the -er words, page 108.

- |               |           |             |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1- teacher    | 2- reader | 3- climber  |
| 4- footballer | 5- farmer | 6- traveler |

**Narrator:** Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check, page 110

- |         |            |           |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| 1- west | 2- whale   | 3- vase   |
| 4- vet  | 5- volcano | 6- winter |

**Narrator:** Listen and write the words, page 111

- |               |          |            |
|---------------|----------|------------|
| 1- wheel      | 2- vest  | 3- volcano |
| 4- west       | 5- whale | 6- vet     |
| 7- watermelon | 8- wet   | 9- violin  |

**Narrator:** Listen and write. Then listen again and check, page 111

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

## Review 3

### LESSON 2

**Narrator:** Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs, page 129

**Nurse:** Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

**Kareem:** I have an earache.

**Nurse:** Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

**Kareem:** No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.

**Nurse:** Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

**Kareem:** Thank you, nurse.

**Narrator:** Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures, page 130

- |           |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1- panda  | 2- penguin | 3- dolphin |
| 4- rabbit | 5- snail   | 6- whale   |

## Unit 10

### LESSON 1

**Narrator:** Listen, and match the places and people page 138

**Narrator:** 1 Sara

**Sara:** I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

**Narrator:** 2 Ahmed

**Ahmed:** My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

**Narrator:** 3 Dina

**Dina:** We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

**Narrator:** 4 Youssef

**Youssef:** I want to borrow some books.



## LESSON



**Narrator** : Listen. Write the letters on the map, page 146

### Number A

**Ahmed** : Excuse me, how can I get to the train station?

**Police officer** : You can walk in the Park Avenue. Go straight to the Main Street and cross the Station Road. It's on your left.

**Ahmed** : Thank you.

### Number B

**Adel** : Where's the supermarket, please?

**Nabil** : Go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's on your right.

**Adel** : Thank you, very much.

### Number C

**Samir** : Is there a café near here?

**Ayman** : Yes, go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's next to the supermarket.

**Samir** : Many thanks.

## Review 4

### LESSON



**Narrator** : Write the missing letters. Listen and check, page 230

1- dīrōsā r

2- pas pōrt

3- skeleton

4- trōc-s

5- bin xōurs

6- sōtcase

7- archaeologist

8- stat n

### LESSON



**Narrator** : Listen and complete with the correct sound, page 232

1- bathrōom

2- enj y

3- wrtē

4- grōy

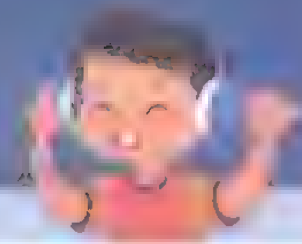
5- plāy

6- mōtēr



# Listening Match

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بسئلة الاستماع الواردة في النصوص والاختبارات



## Unit 7

### LESSON 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- My name is Fatma. I live in a modern apartment. There are four rooms in the apartment. The living room is next to the bedroom. I have three armchairs in the living room. The kitchen is big. I bake bread in the oven

### LESSON 2

In Ancient Egypt, people made their houses near the Nile. They used the Nile's water for drinking and cooking. They used mud from the river to make bricks. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler

### LESSON 3

I'm Dalia. I went to my uncle's farm yesterday. He's a farmer. He lives in an old farmhouse. He keeps many animals. He has cows, chickens, goats and sheep. I played with the goats. They were very funny. My uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. The fields are brilliant. I enjoyed my day.

### Al-Azhar Test

Listen and choose the correct answer

My uncle is a vet. He loves animals. He has two children. His wife is a teacher. They are happy.

### Test - Unit

My name is Ahmed. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother Hany. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. My bedroom is white and green. There is a desk next to my bed. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

## Unit 8

### LESSON 1

My friend Amr didn't go the club yesterday. He had a sore throat. He didn't come to the football practice. He went to the doctor. The doctor told him to have hot drinks. Amr should stay home.

### LESSON 2

My friend Hazem was ill yesterday. He went to the doctor. Hazem had a stomachache. His stomach hurts. The doctor said to him to stay home. Hazem took the medicine and felt well

### LESSON 3

My name is Daaa. I like honey very much. When I have a sore throat, I have honey with lemon. Honey is very useful. It's used as a treatment. It's so good for healing wounds and treating illness. Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

### Al-Azhar Test

I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.

### Test - Unit

I like healthy food. It's important to eat healthy food. We should do some exercise with friends. Sleeping for eight hours is good for health. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

## Unit 9

### LESSON 1

My uncle has a parrot in his house. It's colorful. Its name is Pingo. My uncle puts food and water for Pingo every day. The parrot can talk and repeat what we say. It has a beautiful beak and feathers.

### LESSON 2

When Hisham was five, he could swim and talk. His brother, Nabil is two years younger than him. Nabil couldn't talk or walk, but he could listen to music. Now, Hisham is ten years old. He can use a computer and play chess, too. Nabil is eight years old. He can swim and sing

### Al-Azhar Test

I like birds. My favorite bird is the parrot. It is so beautiful and it can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.

## Test - Unit 9

My favorite animal is the penguin. It lives in the ocean. It's a friendly animal. It swims in a group with his family. It looks cute and cold. It eats fish. I did a project about the penguin at school. My science teacher was very happy about my project.

## Review 3

### Test on units 7, 8 & 9

I'm Laila. I live in Giza. When my parents had to move to a new job, we moved to a closer apartment. It's a bigger apartment. It has four rooms. There's more space so we can have a bigger television in the living room. I like our new apartment.

## Unit 10

### LESSON

My name is Gamal. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my family. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a very big city. We always stay in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

### LESSON

We should encourage our children to visit the library and read books. The children should keep the library clean. They should ask the librarian if they need help. They shouldn't run or make noise.

### LESSONS 4&5

My friend Nadia lives in a small town with her parents. Nadia likes to play with her friends after school. There is a park next to Nadia's house. She plays with her friends in this park.

### Al-Azhar Test

Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants and museums. There's even a beach.

## Test - Unit 10

I'm Hisham. I go to Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a very big city. We always stay in a hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at the restaurant.

## Unit 11

### LESSON

I'm Osama. I went to Dubai last month. There are many high-rise buildings. I stayed in a lovely hotel room. There was a big swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. It was amazing. I went on a boat trip and went on rides at the theme park.

### LESSON

Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year. They always want to check a comfortable hotel. They try traditional Egyptian food. They visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the old parts of Cairo. They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in winter.

### LESSON

Hani can do a lot of activities on vacation. Hani goes to Alexandria in summer. He always goes there with his family. They can see the beach as they stay in a hotel in front of the sea. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the beach.

### Al-Azhar Test

I went to the theme park with my father. We went on different rides. We took lots of photos with my camera. We had a great time.

## Test - Unit 11

Ramy and Adam are friends. They are in primary five. Ramy likes playing football after school on Thursday. Adam likes swimming. He goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan. Ramy and Adam have a good time.

## Review 4

### Test on units 10, 11 & 12

I went to Alexandria in summer. I stayed in a hotel and I saw a lot of tourists. I went to the beach. I wore my swimming suit and sunglasses.

PARENTS' GUIDE  
**CONNECT**

ملحق تسمية المقررات

والواجب المنزلي

2025

**5<sup>th</sup>**

**PRIMARY FIVE  
SECOND TERM**





# Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

## Lesson 1



### Vocabulary

كرسى ذو مسدين

دولاب / خزانة

سرير

فرن

وسادة

تلفزيون

مصعد

مطبخ

دش

حجرة المعيشة

حمام

حديث

بلكونه / شرفة

رائع

تقليدى

جديد

أقرب

حجرة نوم

شقة

مدينة صغيرة

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعيش		يفضل	
ينتقل إلى (يعزل)		يطبخ	
يشارك		يدخل	

# Lesson



## Vocabulary

قرد العواء (سعدان العواء)

احد سكان القرى المحليين

يقوم بعمل بعض الأبحاث

محظوظ

ملصق

مريح

مثالي / رائع

عميق

غير آمن

تمثال

غابة

وحيد

مظلم

مرعب / مخيف

مطر غزير

عادل

مهنم بـ

يكون صداقات

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يموت		يبتسم	
يفتقد / يفوت		يزور	
يحاول		يصرخ	
ينشئ		يغادر	
يرتدى		يقابل	
يعرف		يخبر	



# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We made pizza in our new .....

المنيا - إدارة أبو قرقاص (2024)

a shower

b oven

c cushion

d closet

2. There are two cushions on my .....

a elevator

b bathroom

c bed

d shower

3. I ..... a bedroom with my sister.

المنيا - إدارة أبو قرقاص (2024)

a do

b share

c give

d work

4. Local ..... are friendly and helpful.

a jungles

b villagers

c posters

d rains

5. My sister helped me put my clothes in the .....

a shower

b closet

c kitchen

d cushion

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

move - better - closet - left

In my new apartment, I have a big bedroom. It's much **a** ..... than my old bedroom. I share it with my sister. There are two beds. My sister's bed is on the **b** ..... On the wall, there's a clock. There's a brown **c** ..... next to the armchair

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (2024) المنيا - إدارة أبو قرقاص

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "old" is .....

a new

b ugly

c dark

d bad



2. Mona moved to a new .....

**a** school

**b** class

**c** apartment

**d** city

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the text into a sentence. ....

4. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

5. When did Mona move to a new apartment? .....

**4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوس جملاً.

1. is - **My** - kitchen - new - bigger.

2. go down - in - alone - **Don't** - the street.

3. cousin - came **My** - us - to - visit.

(2024) ٢٠٢٤

4. living **Do** - like - you - there?

5. about the bedrooms - your - **What** - in - apartment?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We didn't ..... (**had**) lunch in our school.

2. They ..... (**go**) to the park with their parents yesterday (2024) ٢٠٢٤

3. His grandpa ..... (**don't**) travel to Aswan last week

4. I'm ..... (**happy**) because I lost my homework.

5. He loved this city because the people were ..... (**unfriendly**).

6. My uncle knew he ..... (**is**) close to the howler monkeys.



### Lesson 3



#### Vocabulary

الطين اللين (طوب من الطين)	إناء
سطح المنزل	فرن
حصيرة من البوص	منطقة النوم
بوابة	محاصيل
مصر القديمة	الريف
أثاث	طابق / دور في مبنى
البردى	صندوق خشبي
حشرات	ضفاف النهر
مختلف عن	نمط خاص
قوى	رياح

#### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يستخدم		يبني	
يطلى / يدهن		يهب (للرياح)	
يسنرخي		يشعر	
يخزن		يسقط	
يربط		يحافظ على / يربى	





## Lesson 4



### Vocabulary

رائع	منازل غريبة
ممل	التدوين في مدونة
شيق	بيئي / صديق للبيئة
مضحك	منزل ريفي
سكان محليون	منظر طبيعي
طاقة	فضيخ
حفل	مزعج
حرارة	مهندس معماري
ضوء	عبر الإنترنت
حديث	مقلوب رأساً على عقب

### Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يغير		يناسب / يلائم	
يعمل		يكتب	
يجد		يحصل على	

# Activities

## Lessons 3&4



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He lost the match last week, so he was ..... (صاحبه - روعة - سعيد (2023)

- ☐ a lucky      ☐ b nice      ☐ c unhappy      ☐ d pleased

2. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make bricks.

- ☐ a wool      ☐ b cotton      ☐ c glass      ☐ d mud

3. She likes ..... about cooking. (دعيت - انا - عيط (2023)

- ☐ a playing      ☐ b blogging      ☐ c growing      ☐ d drinking

4. My uncle lives in a/an ..... so he keeps a lot of animals.

- ☐ a boat      ☐ b farmhouse      ☐ c building      ☐ d apartment

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: (2023)

**mud - wooden - cooler - relax**

Ancient Egyptians were very clever. They used ❶ ..... bricks to build their homes. They made ❷ ..... boxes to keep their clothes and amazing pots for storing crops. They also made reed mats to sit and ❸ ..... on.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. I'm interested in unusual things around the world. One day, I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light.



Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water and sun to heat and make energy.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is interested in .....

- ☐ a farmhouses      ☐ b unusual things      ☐ c fields      ☐ d landscape

2. The main idea of text is about .....

- ☐ a unusual houses      ☐ b search online  
☐ c the Netherlands      ☐ d local people

## B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the unusual house ecological? .....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

5. What did Ahmed find in the Netherlands online?

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. so - This - home - is - unusual - cool.

2. lives - in - My - an old - grandpa - farmhouse.

3. their - made - near - They - homes - the Nile.

4. blogging - I - different - like - about - things.

(2024) ٢٠٢٤

5. is - a - My - architect - father - famous.

6. did - Ancient - their - homes - How - Egyptians - keep?



## Lesson 1



## Vocabulary

_____	سنة
_____	الحمى بالظهر
_____	الحمى بالأسنان
_____	كحة / سعال
_____	كتف
_____	تدريب / تمرين
_____	حريص
_____	قلق
_____	معدة
_____	عسل
_____	نادي
_____	يشعر بتحسن
_____	صداع
_____	مدرّب
_____	كاحل / رسخ القدم
_____	التهاب بالحلق
_____	الحمى بالاذن
_____	برد
_____	الحمى بالظهر

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يأمل		يتكلم	
يؤلم		يقول	
مصاب بـ / يملك		يشعر	

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

أفراد الأسرة	قريب (أقارب)
مزدحم	هئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)
حقن	طريقة - ممر
ضمادة	شخص مريض
خلق	جسر - كوبري
مفيد	جرع
غير معتاد	منتظم
مسئول	مؤدب

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يفهم / يبقى		يصح	
يعالج		ينعلم	
يقع / يسقط		يعتبر	
ينطفئ		يعطي	
يحول / يلف		يدخل	



# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The ..... will check my teeth.

الطبيب - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2024)

- ☐ a architect      ☐ b dentist      ☐ c farmer      ☐ d engineer

2. There are too many people in my town, it's very

- ☐ a quiet      ☐ b calm      ☐ c crowded      ☐ d polite

3. The smoke from the kitchen made me .....

- ☐ a cough      ☐ b stay      ☐ c learn      ☐ d play

4. When the doctor gave her a/an ....., she became better.

- ☐ a corridor      ☐ b injection      ☐ c cut      ☐ d ankle

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

التهابية - إدارة شبين الشناظر (2024)

**earache - cough - stomachache - stay**

I was at school yesterday. My friends Hisham and Yasser didn't come to school. They were ill. Hisham had a ❶ ..... and a sore throat, so he couldn't talk. Yasser had a ❷ ..... because he ate a lot of food at his sister's party. Yasser and Hisham went to the doctor. The doctor said that they must ❸ ..... home and sleep well.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

مطروح - إدارة مطروح (2024): اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Fares is sad. He didn't have a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today because they had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr has an earache from swimming. Luma has a toothache. She went to do the dentist. Two of his friends have a cold. The coach told them to be

careful when they have a cough or a sore throat. They should stay home. Fares is ill, too. He has a backache, and he is worried about his friends.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**dentist**" means a doctor who takes care of our  
☐ a bones                      ☐ b lungs                      ☐ c stomach                      ☐ d teeth
- \_\_\_\_\_ has an earache from swimming.  
☐ a Fares                      ☐ b Lama                      ☐ c Amr                      ☐ d Tarek

## B- Answer the following questions:

- Why is Fares sad? \_\_\_\_\_
- What should Fares' friends do when they have a cough or a sore throat? \_\_\_\_\_
- What did Tarek hurt last night? \_\_\_\_\_

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملاً:

1. have - a - **My** - doesn't - brother - cough. (2024)

2. take - and - medicine - **Stay** - home - the. (2024)

3. cut - **I** - on the - put - a bandage.

4. ankle - at - hurt - club - **Wesam** - his - the. (2024)

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Does she ..... (**had**) a cough?
- He's a good boy. He's ..... (**impolite**) .
- They ..... (**has**) an earache. (2024)
- Karim ..... (**don't**) have a headache.
- What does Amr ..... (**has**) ?

## 6 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي.

- Don t worry, nahla.
- i don't have a backache - -

# Lesson 3



## Vocabulary

ضمادة	جرح
كريم واقي من الشمس	عسل وليمون
أقراص دواء	علاج
جرح بالركبة	حروق الشمس
إصابات	بكتيريا
رعاية طبية	أمراض
شاحنة مغلقة	مادة
برطمان	منظر طبيعي
وشاح	معدية
طلو المذاق	علماء

## Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يستمتع		يتحسّن	
يقتل		يجرح	
يعالج		يتلف	
يصنع		يعرف	

## Lessons 4 & 5



### Vocabulary

لعِب الرياضة	عرض تقديمي
نظام غذائي متوازن	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء .....
خبير / خبراء	النوم بشكل كافي .....
دبوس مشبك	تمرين / تدريب .....
مناديل تنظيف مبللة	قفازات طبية ..
كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات	يحافظ علي صحته
مفيد	مهم
مقص	صابون .....
اربطة مطاطية	صندوق الاسعافات الالوية ...

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتمرن		يحصل على	
يحافظ		يقضي	
يحتاج		ياكل	
يعتنى		يفعل	

# Activities

## Lessons 3-4&5



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اذكر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... makes your cough better.

- a** Bacteria      **b** Honey      **c** Sunscreen      **d** Wound

2. I have a headache, so I'll take

- a** sunscreen      **b** bandage      **c** pills      **d** a pin

3. The nurses know how to ..... bandages.

الاسم عينا (د) (رسم عينا) (2024)

- a** change      **b** kill      **c** damage      **d** eat

4. We need some milk and ..... for our cough.

شعير (د) (رسم شعير) (2023)

- a** cola      **b** tea      **c** juice      **d** honey

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

school - treatments - patients - honey

My father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital. He gets up early and goes to the hospital. He examines the ..... and gives them ..... Yesterday, I had a sore throat. He advised me to drink ..... and lemon.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however, and don't put honey on your cut knee.



## A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

- The text is mainly about .....  
☐ a illnesses      ☐ b honey      ☐ c bacteria      ☐ d wounds
- The underlined word "heal" means to .....  
☐ a damage      ☐ b find out      ☐ c discover      ☐ d get better

## B- Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence
- Why is honey used as a treatment? - - - - -
- When did the Egyptian doctors use honey to treat wounds?

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- pet - I - frog - a - have.
- good - treating - It's - for - illnesses.
- put - Don't - on - knee - honey - your - cut. (2024)
- like - Hisham - honey - Does - eating?
- have - a - You - balanced - should - diet.

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الكلمة الصحيحة بين القوسات:

- We should (doing) some exercise every day
- It's important to (ate) vegetables (2023)
- My presentation today (are) about staying healthy
- Doctors (uses) honey thousands of years ago

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم التالي:

is honey very useful

# March Tests I

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. I like eating honey for .....  
☐ a dinner      ☐ b lunch      ☐ c breakfast      ☐ d snack
2. Some types of honey can kill .....  
☐ a bacteria      ☐ b cuts      ☐ c insects      ☐ d bees
3. Honey helps ..... to heal more quickly.  
☐ a wounds      ☐ b teeth      ☐ c coughs      ☐ d fevers
4. Don't put honey on your cut .....  
☐ a arm      ☐ b knee      ☐ c head      ☐ d ankle

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians slept on reed .....  
☐ a bricks      ☐ b ovens      ☐ c bats      ☐ d mats
2. I have a pet ..... at home.  
☐ a frog      ☐ b fan      ☐ c ferry      ☐ d leaf
3. We have a new ..... which is much easier to cook in. (2024) المصنفه اداره الامور  
☐ a shower      ☐ b oven      ☐ c television      ☐ d closet

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

friendly - monkey - desert - research

My uncle Ahmed is a scientist and he loves animals. He is very interested in howler ..... He is doing a ..... about them. They live in South America deep in the jungle. Local people helped him with his work. They were very kind and ..... .

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Hana. I was born in Cairo and I lived there for 12 years. Then, my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a new apartment in Port Said. I liked living in Port Said. It's a small, clean and quiet city. We can go to the beach

at any time. There are many parks. My new apartment is big. It has three bedrooms, one kitchen, two bathrooms and a big living room. There's a fantastic balcony in the living room.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hana is from..... now.

- ☐ a Port Said      ☐ b Alexandria      ☐ c Cairo      ☐ d Aswan

2. Hana's new apartment is .....

- ☐ a big      ☐ b small      ☐ c high      ☐ d fat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can they go in Port Said? .....
4. How many bedrooms are there in Hana's new apartment?
5. Why did Hana's parents move to a new apartment?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جملا:

1. unsafe - to go - **It's** - the jungle - to. ....
2. help - bacteria - **Honey** - can - to kill. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (**Are**) you have a sore throat?
2. My parents ..... (**buy**) a new apartment last week.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم:

1. it s important to be healthy. ....
2. does he have a cough

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب نصا من 30 كلمة عن

The furniture in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words

reed mats - papyrus

# March Tests 2

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Dalia likes ..... about different things.

- ☐ a writing      ☐ b blogging      ☐ c reading      ☐ d talking

2. Dalia is writing about unusual .....

- ☐ a animals      ☐ b insects      ☐ c homes      ☐ d sports

3. Dalia found the upside down house in .....

- ☐ a the Netherlands      ☐ b France      ☐ c Marrakech      ☐ d Amman

4. People are changing the house to make it .....

- ☐ a bigger      ☐ b modern      ☐ c cleaner      ☐ d higher

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. His grandpa is very kind. she always gives him .....

- ☐ a homework      ☐ b gifts      ☐ c views      ☐ d balconies

2. The ..... is a medical care to help you get better.

- ☐ a wound      ☐ b treatment      ☐ c cut      ☐ d sunburn

3. Did you have a ..... throat?

- ☐ a tooth      ☐ b sore      ☐ c stomach      ☐ d fever

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sunburn - earache - pills - headache

Tamer was sad yesterday. Two of his friends were sick. Samir had an

..... from swimming. The coach told Tamer to be careful. Nabil had a

..... He went to the doctor and gave him some .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

To stay healthy, it's important to follow a balanced diet and eat fresh fruit and vegetables. Some doctors say that having some honey in the morning can kill bacteria. It can also give you energy. Moreover, you should do exercise every day.



For example, walking to school or playing sports at school is a good way to exercise. Don't forget to drink a lot of water. Having enough sleep is also important if you want to stay healthy. It's important to have eight hours of sleep every night.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Having fresh \_\_\_\_\_ keeps you healthy.  
 a) sweets                      b) candies                      c) vegetables                      d) animals
2. Playing sports is a good way to .....  
 a) exercise                      b) eat                      c) travel                      d) kill

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
4. How many sleeping hours should you have every night?
5. What can honey kill? .....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. stay How you healthy can? .....
2. bedrooms - a kitchen - have - We - and - three. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What ..... (do) Tamer have?
2. Where did the Ancient Egyptians ..... (got) mud?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my uncle was interested in howler monkeys .....
2. what did you do yesterday .....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة استغرقت من (30) كلمات عن:

## Different illnesses

Guiding words:

fever - toothache

## Lesson 1



## Vocabulary

حيوان الكنغر	حفاش
بطريق	دولفين
الباندا	حلزون
قوى	سقاء
جميل	زاهي / كثير الالوان .....
مدهش	مختلف
ودود / اليف	مذهل
الظلام	رائع / جذاب
حديقة الحياة البرية	ينام بالمقلوب
غابة مطيرة	قوفعة

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقفل		يطير	
تمكت		يعوم	
يريد		ينام	



يستمتع	يخسئ
يردد	يطعم

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

بسرعة / سريع	مشغول
يستخدم الكمبيوتر	يلعب السطريخ
سرعة جداً	مندهس
مكسرات	يتحدث اللغة الانجليزية ...
منهك (متعب جداً)	فرع شجرة ...
سليم (رياح خفيفة)	جذع شجرة
مريح	ظل
نقطة التقاء / تجمع	تجار ...
مشهور	ناكر الجميل ...
ماوى	عبر عطوف
عديم الفائدة	يسريخ / راحة

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتحدث		يأخذ	
يطير		يركب	
يجري		يعوم	
يفوم		يقرا	



## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We could see kangaroos inside their mom's

- a pocket      b pouch      c bag      d shell

2. A \_\_\_\_\_ lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.

- a kangaroo      b lion      c sail      d bat

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ sleeps upside down on the trees.

- a dolphin      b parrot      c bat      d penguin

4. The snail has a \_\_\_\_\_ and doesn't have legs or arms.

- a shell      b back      c tail      d wing

5. The bats were \_\_\_\_\_ in the dark.

- a hiding      b writing      c feeding      d singing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

travelers - trucks - branches - lived

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green ❷ \_\_\_\_\_. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived. It gave shelter and rest to hundreds of \_\_\_\_\_ as they moved across the country.



### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - a little - wind - A breeze.

2. rested - We - under - tree - the.

3. a friendly - sea - is - animal - A dolphin.

4. can - Kangaroos - very - high - jump.

(2024) الإسماعيلية - إدارة برج العرب

5. do - penguins - live - Where?

(الإسماعيلية - إدارة برج العرب) (2023)

6. study - you - English - Could - yesterday?

7. somewhere - people - A meeting - meet - point - is - where.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Now I (could) play the piano.

(الإسماعيلية - إدارة برج العرب) (2023)

2. They (could to) help their mother.

3. We (can't) drive a car, but now we can.

(الإسماعيلية - إدارة برج العرب) (2023)

4. My father (couldn't) speak German now.

5. Can parrots (flying) in the sky?

6. I couldn't (spoke) English when I was five.

(الإسماعيلية - إدارة برج العرب) (2024)

7. He could swim when he (be) seven years old.

8. What could you (does) when you were three years old?

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم اللائي:

penguins live on ice and snow

# Lesson 3



## Vocabulary

مشهور	حوت
ممتاز	عجلة ( اطار سيارة )
محترف	الشتاء
يسنرخى	مبلل
بركان	يرن
أله الكمان	قرية
الغرب	شيق
سترة (صديري)	مدهش
زهرة	منزعج
مفاجئ	مهتم

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعرر		يجلس	
يردى		يقابل	
يالى		يجد	

# Lessons 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

حيوان غير مألوف .....

بريد إلكتروني .....

الاطوم (بقر البحر)

ارض عشبية .....

اسم الشهرة .....

نسبة مئوية .....

قاع البحر .....

طائر العقاب .....

بارد

دئب

بيئة الحيوان أو النبات .....

دافئ .....

جميل

تور أمريكي

سطح

محبوب

قطبي

مخطط معلومات بياني

## Conjugation of verbs

Present

Past

Present

Past

يسمع

يقضى

بأمل

يدع / يسمح

# Activities

## Lessons 3-4&5



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Eagles, wolves and \_\_\_\_\_ are animals that live on grasslands.  
☐ a bisons      ☐ b dugongs      ☐ c dolphins      ☐ d whales
- This book is very \_\_\_\_\_. I want to read it again.  
☐ a boring      ☐ b tiring      ☐ c interesting      ☐ d ugly
- Bats can \_\_\_\_\_ upside down on trees.  
☐ a sleep      ☐ b sing      ☐ c swim      ☐ d speak
- Dugongs spend many hours eating grass from the sea  
☐ a table      ☐ b chair      ☐ c bed      ☐ d floor

المهنا - إدارة الحقوق (2020)

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

نشره - راسموس (2024)

bed - dugong - dog - cow

This week we are talking about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I think it's got a lovely friendly face. Its nickname is the sea <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Noha is interested in animals. She \_\_\_\_\_ animals. She also watches programmes about animal habitats. She loves the kangaroos, penguins and parrots. The kangaroos are interesting. They live in Australia. The penguins are black and white. They live on ice and snow.

She reads about the dugong. It's a marine animal. It lives all its life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. It's cute and has got lovely friendly face.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Noha is interested in \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a plants      ☐ b animals      ☐ c colors      ☐ d reading
- Noha watches programmes about animal \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a habitats      ☐ b food      ☐ c life      ☐ d bodies





## B- Answer the following questions:

1. What has the dugong got? .....
4. Where do penguins live? .....
5. What color are the penguins? .....

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. a photo - She - to - Tarek - sent.

الهجرة - إجازة العرم (2024)

2. tiring - Our - trip - school - was - very

3. once - on - I - a week - play - a team.

4. cousin - My - a very - is - reader - good

الكتاب - (2024)

5. talking - on unusual - We're - animal - about

6. eat - the sea - What - cow - does?

7. Emad's - What's - unusual - favorite - animal?

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My favorite (teaching) is Miss Mona, she s very kind and helpful

2. Uncle Youssef is very (interesting) in the rocks (2023)

3. The trip I went yesterday was very (noted) (2023)

4. My uncle is a very good (read) (2023)

5. When I was six, I ..... (can't) play tennis.

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على:

1. omar doesn t like sport. ....

2. i hope to hear from you soon .....



## Lesson 1



## Vocabulary

سوق	بلك
فندق	مصنع
مطعم	مكتبة
سوبر ماركت	نصب تذكاري / اثر
شاطيء	ميدان
تقاليد	مول نحاري
شاي بالنعناع ...	محطة
مأكولات / أطباق محلية	منفذ
حضارة / ثقافة	سائح

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يذكر	يذكر	يكتشف	يكتشف
يملك	يملك	يعتقد	يعتقد
		يري	يري

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

البيئة	زر
قمامة	أمين المكتبة
صندوق قمامة	معدرة
زهرة	غدا
سر بشكل مباشر	على اليسار
على اليمين	الطابق العلوي
بصوت عالي	في نهاية

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينتظر		يستدير	
يغلق		يفقد	
يضغط / يدفع		يعبر	
يختار		يقف	
يعود		يحضر	
يمشي		يففز	
يجري		يضيع	

# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Keep the environment .....  
 a clean                      b dirty                      c boring                      d interested
- Don't ..... up flowers, please.  
 a help                      b pick                      c plant                      d walk
- I ate some local cuisine from a famous .....  
 a restaurant                      b bank                      c museum                      d station
- We should encourage our ..... to visit the library.  
 a stores                      b children                      c trips                      d traditions
- We can ..... books from the library.  
 a borrow                      b sell                      c lose                      d buy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

لشوقيه - إدارة ههيا (2020)

librarian - talk - cell - return

When we go to our school library, we should follow the library rules. We shouldn't eat in the library. We can't use our ..... phone. We should ask the ..... if we need help. We should ..... the book to its place.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة (2020)

Alexandria is a really **exciting** place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city, with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach! My friend is visiting Alexandria from Germany. He thinks it's really cool here. He thinks there are some good museums. He loves just sitting in the roof garden of his hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- My friend likes drinking mint tea in the .....  
 a museum                      b roof                      c park                      d market



2. The underlined word "exciting" means .....

a ugly

b bad

c wonderful

d boring

3- Answer the following questions

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

4. Why does the writer's friend like to visit Alexandria?

5. Where does the writer's friend love sitting? .....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. shouldn't - lose - You - book - your.

2. waste - Never - time - your.

3. a big - There's - in - station - my town.

4. on - left - The - the - factory - is.

درست - إدارة المناهج (2024)

5. near - a shopping - Is - here - there - mall?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Don't ..... (ate) in the library.

2. Please, ..... (picks) up this trash.

3. .... (front) the library clean.

الدفعية - إدارة المناهج (2024)

4. .... (turned) left. The shop is on the right.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. drink your water outside the library .....

2. is there a bank near here .....

(2024)

# Lesson 3



## Vocabulary

غريب المظهر	تائه
أحمق	أكياس الفاصوليا
مخلوق	حيوان الجربوع
طائر ابو منجل	أغصان فروع
قروي (احد سكان القرية)	التجار
بوقاحة	ثعبان
أصوات	مظلم
حشد جمهور	ذكي

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعتذر		يتظاهر	
يتعرف على		يبيع	
يلتفت		يفهم	
يقرر		يقول	
يطير		يمشى بعيداً	
يبدأ		يسلى يرفه	



## Lessons 4 1 6



### Vocabulary

أماكن جذب السياح	رحلة بالقارب
مريح	متنزه مائي
مراكز التسوق ..	الحضارة / الثقافة
المسارح	الفلون
موقع	رائع
برهة حلوة	طازح
الحديقة الدولية .....	كوبري
أثرى	مسهر سائر
تاريخ	لاد

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
تمطر		يحدث	
يرور		يطعم	
يشجع		يأخذ	

# Activities

## Lessons 3-4&5



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This man is foolish. He speaks .....

- ☐ a politely      ☐ b rudely      ☐ c kindly      ☐ d nicely

2. I couldn't ..... this strange creature.

- ☐ a apologize      ☐ b recognize      ☐ c pretend      ☐ d begin

3. You can see a lot of ..... in the museum.

(2024) ...

- ☐ a treasure      ☐ b bridge      ☐ c rivers      ☐ d buses

4. We had a ..... in the park yesterday.

- ☐ a boat      ☐ b picnic      ☐ c history      ☐ d traffic

5. The ..... sell their things at the market.

- ☐ a librarians      ☐ b vets      ☐ c traders      ☐ d readers

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

الفيوم - إدارة شرق الفيوم (2024)

beach - large - visit - learn

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful ..... is 14 kms long! There is also a ..... green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also ..... the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا (2024)

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It is free to go in. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious foods. We love our town very much.



## A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

- This text is about a .....  
☐ a restaurant      ☐ town      ☐ library      ☐ shopping mall
- We can go to the ..... when it is hot.  
☐ bookshop      ☐ supermarket      ☐ waterpark      ☐ school

## B- Answer the following questions:

- Where is the zoo? .....
- What does the market sell? .....
- What is always open in the town? .....

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - our - There's - town - a waterpark.

2. lessons - did - What - learn - Gabi?

3. on - city - the beach - This - is.

(2024) ٢٠٢٤

4. an ibis - and - met - Gabi - a snake.

5. perfect - town - our - This - is.

6. was - and - Gabi - sorry - foolish.

(2024) ٢٠٢٤

## 5 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. new Alamein is on the beach

2. It s really hot in our town



# April Tests 1

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(2023)

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة:

1 There are many ..... we should follow in the library

- a** phones                      **b** walls                      **c** books                      **d** rules

2. We shouldn't eat in the .....

- a** restaurant                      **b** library                      **c** park                      **d** hotel

3. We shouldn't use our ..... there.

- a** books                      **b** pens                      **c** cell phones                      **d** rules

4. We shouldn't ..... our books.

- a** save                      **b** read                      **c** lose                      **d** keep

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ibis is a beautiful .....

الشهيم - إدارة شرف الشهيم (2024)

- a** sack                      **b** trader                      **c** creature                      **d** crowd

2. Don't run in the library. Walk .....

- a** loudly                      **b** quietly                      **c** quickly                      **d** badly

3 I went to the wildlife ..... and saw many animals.

(2024)

- a** home                      **b** hospital                      **c** school                      **d** park

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

kangaroos - bamboo - awesome - pouch

I went to a school trip in the wildlife park. I had a great day. It was an ..... trip. I saw many wild animals. I saw the ..... . They were interesting. I could see the lions running through the trees. I saw the pandas. They are black and white. They eat .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! My name is Yasser. I have a big farm. I've got a lot of animals. I grow many fruits and vegetables. I live in a traditional house. I have a big garden around my house.

I keep a beautiful parrot in my garden in a big cage. I like parrots very much. This parrot my uncle bought it for me on my last birthday. My parrot's name is Pingo. I feed it every day. His feathers are colorful. It can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Pingo is the name of my \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a bird                      b rabbit                      c parrot                      d fish
2. The word "repeat" means \_\_\_\_\_ it again.  
 a play                      b say                      c eat                      d draw

## B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph into one sentence. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Who bought the parrot for Yasser? \_\_\_\_\_
5. When did Yasser feed the parrot? \_\_\_\_\_

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. shell - The - has - snail - a. \_\_\_\_\_
2. is - the - Where's - , please - factory? (2024)

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (Went) straight on, then turn right.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (could) drive a car when she was a child.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. The kangaroos live in australia - - -
2. is the city on the beach

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your city, Alexandria

Guiding phrases

- exciting place - amazing restaurants



# April Tests 2

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Peter is from .....  
☐ a Italy      ☐ b America      ☐ c Alexandria      ☐ d England
- Alexandria is a beautiful ..... near the sea.  
☐ a town      ☐ b shop      ☐ c city      ☐ d village
- Peter loves the ..... of modern and old buildings.  
☐ a view      ☐ b mix      ☐ c sight      ☐ d difference
- Peter likes to find out about the ..... and traditions.  
☐ a culture      ☐ b directions      ☐ c languages      ☐ d illnesses

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A ..... can walk, but it has no legs.  
☐ a panda      ☐ b parrot      ☐ c snake      ☐ d penguin
- In the library, you have to ..... your books back in two weeks.  
☐ a lose      ☐ b bring      ☐ c win      ☐ d throw
- I visited New Alamein on my summer .....  
☐ a information      ☐ b vacation      ☐ c station      ☐ d transportation

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

buy - live - fresh - cuisine

I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant. You can try some of the local .....  
 We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely ..... local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to ..... my ingredients at the market in the old town.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mego. I am a two-year old penguin. I live in the South Pole. A funny thing about me is that I am a bird with wings, but I can't fly! I use my wings to swim.



## Dictation & Exercises

They help me swim underwater really fast. Another funny thing about me is that some people say that I look like I'm wearing a fancy jacket. The black and white colors help me hide from dangerous animals. I really love cold weather. My thick feathers make me pretty warm.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Penguins use their wings to .....

☐ a eat

☐ b fly

☐ c sleep

☐ d swim

2. The black and white colors help penguins hide from dangerous. . .

☐ a jackets

☐ b photos

☐ c animals

☐ d people

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Mego? .....

4. Where does Mego, the penguin live? .....

5. What does the penguin's thick feather make it? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للتكوين جملاً:

1. waste - your - Never - time. ....

2. penguins - the - live - Where - do? .....

(2020)

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hossam couldn't ..... (played) the guitar at six.

2. .... (Are) there a hospital in the square?

### 7 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. noha is a good librarian .....

2. where's the supermarket, please .....

### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your trip to wildlife

#### Guiding questions

1- What did you see in the wildlife park?

2- How was your trip at the end?

# Unit 11 Vacations

## Lesson 1



### Vocabulary

فندق	شاطيء
حقيرة سفر	كاميرا
حمام سباحة	مدينة
ناطحة سحاب	متحف
ملاهي	مطار
تذكرة	نظارة شمس
جواز سفر	سائح
أجازة / عطلة	رحلة جوية
أثار القدم	ابن
طابق / دور في مبنى	ابنة
جزيرة	زوج

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصل		يقضى (وقت)	
يزور		يطير / يسافر جوا	
يسريح		يغادر	
يحزم (حقائب)		ينام	

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

تدوينة في المفكرة اليومية	يسجل وصوله للفندق
يتجول	تقليدي
مصنوعات يدوية	رحلة نهائية ( في النهار )
أكشاك	مفكرة يومية
مرشد سياحي	منشور / كراسة دعائية
مقابلته	استكشاف
حبه الوصول	حضره / ثقافة
وطن	قلعة

### Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصل للفندق		يعود (سارو)	
يتوجه إلى		يسجل (يدون)	
يطفو		يعود	
يتحول في		يكشف	
يركب		يعاين	
يشترى		يستكشف	
يحمل		يصل	

# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need a ..... to travel to different countries.

- a** camera      **b** passport      **c** computer      **d** phone

2. There are a lot of clothes in my .....

- a** suitcase      **b** bottle      **c** sunglasses      **d** ticket

3. The Dead Sea is ..... for our skin.

- a** bad      **b** good      **c** unhealthy      **d** unlucky

4. We had the chance to ..... through the streets.

- a** wander      **b** pack      **c** float      **d** discover

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

نص: - دائرة - صفيحة (2024)

last - trip - email - sister

Today, Mom received an email. It's from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani.

They are on a business ..... traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India ..... week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the ..... aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Today was the best day ever! I went with my father by plane to Amman. It was the first time to travel by plane. We went to the Memphis restaurant and enjoyed a traditional Jordanian meal. We spend a nice time there. We had the chance to wander through the streets and I bought a lovely colorful rug for my mom. Then, I went to the museum and saw beautiful paintings.

Tomorrow we will head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt and we will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The market is wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:**

1. The text is mainly about .....
- ☐ a a trip to Amman ☐ b a flight to a restaurant
- ☐ c beautiful paintings ☐ d wonderful markets
2. The writer bought a colorful rug for his .....
- ☐ a father ☐ b mom ☐ c sister ☐ d cousin

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
4. What did the writer enjoy in the Memphis restaurant?
5. Where will the writer head out tomorrow?

**4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. very - was - Our - comfortable - room.
2. we - go - Shall - on - shopping - the weekend?
3. bought - a lovely - I - colorful - rug.
4. packed - We - suitcases - vacation - on - our.
5. to - London - landed - Our - at - flight - seven.

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We studied English ..... (in) six o'clock.
2. They traveled to Alexandria ..... ( ) May 12<sup>th</sup>. (2024)
3. We'll meet our friend Emad .... (at) Monday.
4. We went to Port Said ..... (in) holiday.
5. .... ( ) the evening, we do our homework. (2023)
6. They open the shop ..... (on) nine o'clock.

### Lesson 3



#### Vocabulary

مقعد طويل	يذهب في إجازة
مذهل	حزين أو محبط قليلاً
ملعب	واجبة
مارب / عابراً	عرض (مسرحي)
فجأة	أمر / أصافي
مدهش	رائع
ممنوع / شبق	ممکن
حميل	لطف / نارد
نشيط	كلمة
شهرة	ضخم

#### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
تصل / تلتقي		باتي	
يوافق		يعتقد	
يصاح		يجد	
يتكلم		يعرف	



## Lesson 4



### Vocabulary

متحف	معالم سياحية
كثبان رملية	مفكرة يومية
اكلات شعبية	فرنسا
مصنوعات يدوية	برج ايفل (باريس)
طاه / طباط	رحلة قصيرة
كشك	التجول
سلاحف	معدن
ثقافى / حضارى	الغطس
ذو اللون زاهية	تقليدى

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحاول		يفهم	
ينتظر		يجارى	
يزور		يتكلم	
يشتمل		يذكر	



## Lessons 3-4&5



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I sat on the \_\_\_\_\_ and enjoyed watching the beautiful plants in the park.  
☐ a bed                      ☐ b closet                      ☐ c bench                      ☐ d couch
- The Eiffel tower in Paris is made of \_\_\_\_\_. بورسعيد - إدارة المناخ (2024)  
☐ a leather                      ☐ b metal                      ☐ c plastic                      ☐ d glass
- We went to the local restaurant and saw the \_\_\_\_\_ making delicious dishes.  
☐ a chef                      ☐ b architect                      ☐ c tourist                      ☐ d trader
- Be careful, the snake is \_\_\_\_\_. الغربية - إدارة السلطة (2024)  
☐ a expensive                      ☐ b poisonous                      ☐ c perfect                      ☐ d traditional

**2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cafés - playground - picnic - vacations

Al-Azhar Park is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. We can spend a lot of time there. There are tall trees and it has more plants. It also has a lake and \_\_\_\_\_, too. There is a space for all your family to have a big \_\_\_\_\_. I like going there with my friends on \_\_\_\_\_.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: دمناس - إدارة دمياط الجديدة (2023)

Last vacation, I went to the Pyramids in Giza. I went there by bus. My friend Hisham went with me. There, I enjoyed my time. We saw wonderful monuments that the Ancient Egyptians built. We saw the Sphinx. Its head looks like the man's face. Hisham rode the camel. Then, we spoke with the tourists. We were happy to speak English well. We had a big picnic. After that we returned back home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d

- We went by \_\_\_\_\_ to the Pyramids.  
☐ a train                      ☐ b bus                      ☐ c taxi                      ☐ d car



2. The underlined pronoun "Its" refers to the .....

☐ a Pyramids

☐ b Egyptians

☐ c camel

☐ d Sphinx

.....

3. What's the main idea of the text?

4. Who did they speak with?

5. What did Hisham ride at the Pyramids? .....

**4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. perfect - Did - have - a - vacation - you?

2. went - on - Who - trip - a boat?

(2024)

3. very - people - were - The French - kind.

4. things - What - did - see - in - the park - you?

5. did - When - to - you - restaurant - go - the traditional?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Crocodiles are ..... (danger) animals.

(2024)

2. Mohamed Salah is a very ..... ( ) footballer.

(2023)

3. That cell phone is very ..... ( ) . I can't buy it.

4. Noha can solve any problems. She's ..... (solve) .

5. Don't touch this ..... (poison) snake.



# General Tests



## امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

### صفحة ١ إدارة دار السلام التعليمية

#### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Once there was a very old tree.

- ☐ a small ☐ b big ☐ c short ☐ d tall

2. The trunk of the tree was very .....

- ☐ a clean ☐ b hard ☐ c wide ☐ d small

3. The tree has many green .....

- ☐ a seeds ☐ b flowers ☐ c branches ☐ d fruits

4. The tree gave ..... and rest to hundreds of travelers.

- ☐ a shelter ☐ b home ☐ c food ☐ d heat

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Many tourists like visiting Egypt because of the ..... places in it.

- ☐ a brilliant ☐ b awful ☐ c bad ☐ d boring

2. I can't hear well, I have a/an .....

- ☐ a cold ☐ b backache ☐ c earache ☐ d cough

3. This boy is ....., he never thanks anyone for doing something good.

- ☐ a polite ☐ b friendly ☐ c calm ☐ d ungrateful

#### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fish - bricks - water - keep

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its ..... for drinking, cooking and washing. They also used mud from the river to make ..... for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to ..... their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الاسئلة:

Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Honey is used as a treatment for some injuries. Some types of honey that the doctors use is a special kind of honey that is safe to use as a treatment. If you have honey in your cupboard, you can make it with milk to make your cough better.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of  
☐ a weeks      ☐ b months      ☐ c years      ☐ d days
2. The text is about .....  
☐ a Egyptian papyrus      ☐ b tea  
☐ c howler monkeys      ☐ d honey

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What kind of honey did doctors use?
4. What was honey used for? .....
5. Why do we mix honey with milk? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the - is - factory, - Where - please?
2. howler - Could - hear - you - the - monkeys?

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Can you ..... (climbs) a tree?
2. .... (Doesn't) talk to your friends at the classroom.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. His birthday is in august .....
2. did you go by bus .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقبره إسبانيه من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

modern kitchen - balcony

My apartment

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Ahmed lives in .....  
☐ a Giza                      ☐ b Cairo                      ☐ c Aswan                      ☐ d Alexandria
2. Alexandria is in the ..... of Egypt.  
☐ a north                      ☐ b south                      ☐ c west                      ☐ d east
3. Alexandria has a nice .....  
☐ a time                      ☐ b weather                      ☐ c park                      ☐ d place
4. Alexandria is famous for the beautiful .....  
☐ a buildings                      ☐ b towns                      ☐ c beaches                      ☐ d stores

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last year, he ..... play chess, but now he can.  
☐ a can                      ☐ b can't                      ☐ c couldn't                      ☐ d don't
2. We have a new ..... which much easier to cook in.  
☐ a television                      ☐ b closet                      ☐ c shower                      ☐ d oven
3. Spending time with your friends is good for your .....  
☐ a health                      ☐ b sleep                      ☐ c cut                      ☐ d food

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**fun - dive - restaurant - beach**

Alexandria is a big city near the sea. I like spending my vacation there. My favorite place is the ..... I can swim and ..... under water. It's great to go there and have .....



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** امراً النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club, but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Sarah went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Ali was very worried about his friends.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about Ali's .....

- a** parents      **b** family      **c** sisters      **d** friends

2. Ali was very ..... about his friends.

- a** happy      **b** worried      **c** unfair      **d** tired

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. Where did Ali go yesterday? .....

5. Why did Sarah go to the dentist? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملاً:

1. homes - think of - unusual - **What** - you - do? .....

2. the club - at - a good - **We** - day - had. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (**are**) you have a stomachache?

2. The trip I went yesterday was very .... (**bored**).

**7 Punctuate the following:**

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my uncle was very happy indeed .....

2. do you have a stomachache .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة استثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

**Old Egyptian's Houses**

**Guiding phrases**

had flat roofs - keep their homes cool

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الاستماع آخر الكرسة

1 Omar loves his

- ☐ a bedroom ☐ b kitchen ☐ c living room ☐ d modern

2. On the right, there is a/an ..... with two cushions.

- ☐ a bed ☐ b armchair ☐ c couch ☐ d chair

3. On the left, there is a .....

- ☐ a television ☐ b computer ☐ c poster ☐ d closet

4. Omar loves watching television .....

- ☐ a in the evening ☐ b in the afternoon  
☐ c in the morning ☐ d at night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. If you want to borrow a book, go to the .....

- ☐ a museum ☐ b factory ☐ c library ☐ d square

2. Mona has a strong ..... Her head hurts.

- ☐ a cold ☐ b headache ☐ c backache ☐ d earache

3. A ..... is a little wind.

- ☐ a breeze ☐ b trunk ☐ c branch ☐ d leave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

free - picnics - waterpark - classes

In my town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there after

It is really hot in our town, so there is a ..... that is always open. There is a wonderful market that sells all kind of delicious food. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family ..... in the shade.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Reda. I'm eleven years old. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most important botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The spring festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The underlined word "starts" means .....  
☐ a finishes      ☐ b ends      ☐ c begins      ☐ d travels
- Reda will have a ..... vacation.  
☐ a bad      ☐ b useless      ☐ c boring      ☐ d good

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- What does Reda want? .....
- How old is Reda? .....
- Where's the Orman Garden? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

- apartment - I - a big - live - in. ....
- important - food - healthy - It is - to eat. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Manal could swim when she ..... (**be**) five.
- ..... (**Doesn't**) write in the book.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- is there a station near here .....
- he has a sore throat .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions**

A wonderful day

- Where did you go yesterday?
- What did you see?

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Fareeda has two .....

☐ a sisters

☐ b brothers

☐ c cousins

☐ d sons

2. She stayed in her old apartment about ..... years.

☐ a three

☐ b twelve

☐ c five

☐ d ten

3. The new apartment is .....

☐ a small

☐ b tiny

☐ c big

☐ d bad

4. They have two .....

☐ a bathrooms

☐ b bedrooms

☐ c ovens

☐ d kitchens

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We went to the ..... to take the train to Luxor.

☐ a library

☐ b monument

☐ c bank

☐ d station

2. There is so much ..... in the Dead Sea that make you float.

☐ a sugar

☐ b slat

☐ c flour

☐ d rice

3. We need ..... if someone hurts his knee.

☐ a scissors

☐ b safety pins

☐ c bandages

☐ d gloves

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**bats - animals - penguin - pouch**

Sara and her friends went to the wildlife park last weekend. They saw many interesting ..... . Sara thinks that kangaroos are amazing. They can jump on two legs. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's ..... . Sara saw many birds, too. Her favorite bird is the ..... . It's black and white and looks funny.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: افقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. My family members and I travel to different countries, such as Bahrain, France and Dubai. Dubai is making an artificial island in the sea and building the tallest hotels and palaces over them. Tourists from all over the world come to visit them. I find that visiting other countries to know their historical and cultural history is great. That gives us a good feeling to know about other cultures and if **they** are modern or old. That would be a lot better than reading about them. So, I love tourism a lot.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .....  
☐ a tourists      ☐ b cultures      ☐ c people      ☐ d books
- My family members and I travel to ..... countries.  
☐ a many      ☐ b any      ☐ c same      ☐ d different

#### B- Answer the following questions

- Why do tourists from all over the world come to visit Dubai? .....
- What is the main idea of the text? .....
- What's Dubai making in the sea? ..

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- dad - swimmer - good - a - **Is** - your? .....
- this - is - place - a fantastic - **I** - think. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

افقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My Dad ..... (**go**) to Aswan last week.
- He is sick. He ..... (**have**) a headache.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- maps help us to know the directions .....
- is alexandria near the sea? .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

beautiful beach - Alexandria Library



5

إدارة كفر صقر التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ali loves his

- a bedroom      b kitchen      c living room      d balcony

2. On the right, there is a/an ..... with two cushions.

- a armchair      b bed      c couch      d chair

3. On the left, there is a .....

- a TV      b computer      c poster      d closet

4. Ali loves watching television .....

- a in the morning      b in the afternoon  
c in the evening      d at night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The pandas eat

- a bamboo      b flour      c money      d koshari

2. We should apologize when we make a .....

- a mistake      b party      c pizza      d lunch

3. A ..... is a place where you can borrow books.

- a hospital      b library      c bank      d station

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

middle - Park - high - long

New Alamein is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms ❶ ! There is also a large, green lake right in the ❷ of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International ❸ If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center.





**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here. You can go on the big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theatres, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. You can also find delicious food in different restaurants there.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about .....  
☐ a Alexandria    ☐ b Paris    ☐ c Rome    ☐ d London
2. It ..... rains in London.  
☐ a never    ☐ b ever    ☐ c often    ☐ d rarely

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Where can you take a relaxing boat trip?
4. What can you visit in London? .....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1. you - an - Do - have - earache? .....  
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:
2. movie - was - That - boring - so. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Did Ahmed ..... (played) football yesterday?  
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:
2. We go to school ..... (on) the morning.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

1. what did you do last week .....
2. did you have lunch .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقبره إسنائه من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

How to stay healthy

Guiding elements

a lot of water - have a balanced diet

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1 I had a lovely day

- a** yesterday      **b** last week      **c** tomorrow      **d** last month

2. I went to Alexandria with my .....

- a** dad      **b** mum      **c** friends      **d** brother

3. We went to Alexandria by .....

- a** car      **b** train      **c** plane      **d** bus

4. We went to Alexandria to see our .....

- a** uncle      **b** teacher      **c** friend      **d** aunt

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm glad because mom didn't buy that chair, it was

- a** friendly      **b** comfortable      **c** safe      **d** uncomfortable

2. People can go to the ..... when it's hot.

- a** malls      **b** beaches      **c** banks      **d** markets

3. Good people always tell the .....

- a** news      **b** truth      **c** surprise      **d** pills

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**could - funny - missed - can**

My name is Nada. I was born in Luxor. We moved to Cairo fifteen years ago. When we moved away, I was sad. I <sup>1</sup> ..... my old friends too much. Last week, I met my old friend Eman in Cairo. She told me <sup>2</sup> ..... stories. She said when I was little I <sup>3</sup> ..... run fast. I couldn't draw a lion. I invited her for lunch. I was so happy.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text talks about ..... in Ancient Egypt.  
☐ a beaches      ☐ b seasons      ☐ c homes      ☐ d flowers
- The opposite of the word "hot" is .....  
☐ a cold      ☐ b bad      ☐ c strong      ☐ d fast

##### B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did Ancient Egyptians make their homes near the Nile?
- Did the mud make strong walls? .....
- What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make their homes cooler?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- doesn't - Huda - have - an earache. ....
- your friend - is - good - time - Spending - with. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- ..... (Comes) here, Hana.
- I was born ..... (at) 2010.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- hala had a picnic last Friday .....
- did ahmed play football? .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding elements

books - mobile phones

Library rules

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1 Laila is a

☐ a teacher

☐ b doctor

☐ c vet

☐ d firefighter

2. Honey is also used as a

☐ a drink

☐ b type

☐ c treatment

☐ d bacteria

3. Honey was first used to treat wounds by doctors

☐ a Chinese

☐ b French

☐ c American

☐ d Egyptian

4. Some types of honey contain things that can help to bacteria

☐ a eat

☐ b sleep

☐ c kill

☐ d find

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are very big cats.

☐ a Pandas

☐ b Lions

☐ c Bats

☐ d Dogs

2. Writing 100 words in a minute is .....

☐ a unhappy

☐ b immoral

☐ c impossible

☐ d unsafe

3. Our body has many ..... to help us stand up.

☐ a eyes

☐ b ears

☐ c fingers

☐ d bones

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

jump - bats - penguin - pouch

Mona and her friends went to the wildlife park last weekend. They saw many interesting animals. Mona thinks that kangaroos are amazing. They can ❶ on two legs. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's ❷. Mona saw many birds, too. Her favorite bird is the ❸. It's black and white and looks funny.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last year, I went to Dubai with my family. The flight from Egypt took about four hours, but it was comfortable and we all slept. It didn't take long time to get through the airport. When we arrived, we got our suitcases straight away. Dubai is a wonderful place to visit. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, garden, and trees to sit under and relax. We went to Burj Khalifa and met a lot of tourists there. It was a lovely vacation.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d

1. The flight from ..... was comfortable.

- ☐ a England      ☐ b France      ☐ c Mexico      ☐ d Egypt

2. Dubai is a ..... place to visit.

- ☐ a fit      ☐ b bad      ☐ c wonderful      ☐ d boring

##### B- Answer the following questions

3. Where did the writer and his family go last year?

4. Who did they meet at Burj Khalifa? .....

5. How long did the flight from Egypt to Dubai take about ?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. drink - you - of - plenty - Should - water? .....

2. have - legs - Snails - or - arms - don't. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He ..... (can't) swim when he was five.

2. The waiter is ..... ( ..... ) . He doesn't smile to the guests.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. he bought a new shirt last week .....

2. do you have a cough .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alowachin

Guiding phrases

amazing restaurants - visit the beach



## 8

إدارة كوم حمادة التعليمية

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نهي الاستماع آخر الكراسة

- Ramez went to the \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
☐ a hotel      ☐ b wildlife park      ☐ c club      ☐ d school
- \_\_\_\_\_ can swim. They live in cold places.  
☐ a Penguins      ☐ b Lions      ☐ c Kangaroos      ☐ d Elephants
- The \_\_\_\_\_ were so beautiful.  
☐ a kangaroos      ☐ b lions      ☐ c parrots      ☐ d elephants
- Ramez fed penguins some \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a rice      ☐ b fish      ☐ c meat      ☐ d beans

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- If you want to borrow a book, go to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a museum      ☐ b factory      ☐ c library      ☐ d square
- \_\_\_\_\_ live on snow and ice.  
☐ a Parrots      ☐ b Kangaroos      ☐ c Penguins      ☐ d Lions
- In Ancient Egypt, there were \_\_\_\_\_ to sit and sleep on.  
☐ a baskets      ☐ b pots      ☐ c reed mats      ☐ d gardens

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

doctor - cough - earache - ankle

Fares didn't have a good day at the club yesterday. Five of his friends didn't come to the club. His friend Tarek hurt his \_\_\_\_\_ at a football practice. Amr has an \_\_\_\_\_ from swimming. Ola has a toothache. Amira has a \_\_\_\_\_ and a sore throat.





#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. He had a wonderful day out with his family. They stayed in the car. They could see the lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's **pouch**. Ramez's favorite birds were the parrots. They were so beautiful, and they could talk! Bats were all hiding, and they couldn't see them in the dark.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about Ramez's visit to the .....  
 a square      b bank      c theatre      d wildlife park
- A "**pouch**" is a small place inside the body of the .....  
 a parrot      b monkey      c penguin      d kangaroo

##### B- Answer the following questions:

- What were Ramez's favorite birds? .....
- When did Ramez go to the new wildlife park? .....
- Where could they see the lions? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

- a room - share - **I** - my - with - sister. ....
- the - do - shopping mall - **How** - I - get to? .....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- When she was ten, she ..... (**can**) use a tablet.
- She ..... (**not have**) a headache.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- adam is very friendly .....
- amr visited his uncle yesterday .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إثناثية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

**Your bedroom**

**Guiding phrases:**

on the right - in the middle

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. The dugong is a/an

☐ a wild animal

☐ b sea animal

☐ c insect

☐ d bird

2. It eats

☐ a grass

☐ b fruit

☐ c banana

☐ d meat

3. It has got a lovely friendly

☐ a eye

☐ b ear

☐ c face

☐ d head

4. Its nickname is the

☐ a fat cow

☐ b ugly cow

☐ c big cow

☐ d sea cow

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Very small things that can make you ill

☐ a birds

☐ b bacteria

☐ c farmers

☐ d insects

2. They didn't recognize the road because they were

☐ a lost

☐ b happy

☐ c lucky

☐ d clever

3. This serves delicious dishes.

☐ a hospital

☐ b library

☐ c restaurant

☐ d bank

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**pots - insects - delicious - papyrus**

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from now. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on it. They used ❶ to cover the windows. This kept ❷ outside. In every home, there were large ❸ and baskets for storing.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: افقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You can see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a "relaxing" boat trip on the River Thames.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "relaxing" means .....  
☐ a free                      ☐ b busy                      ☐ c comfortable                      ☐ d drawing
- You can take a ..... trip on the River Thames.  
☐ a school                      ☐ b bus                      ☐ c train                      ☐ d boat

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
- Mention some famous places in London. ....
- What can you go on in London? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكويين جملاً:

- hospital - is - a busy - The - place. ....
- he - a - throat - Does - have - sore? ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

افقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- He is ..... (interesting) in playing video games.
- Mona ..... (can) ride a bike when she was five.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- thank you for helping me .....
- was Ramy happy yesterday .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding elements

treat wounds - kill bacteria

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و صغ دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. It's important to eat \_\_\_\_\_ foods.  
☐ a fast                      ☐ b healthy                      ☐ c sweet                      ☐ d expensive
2. We can do lots of things to \_\_\_\_\_ our health.  
☐ a exercise                      ☐ b make                      ☐ c look after                      ☐ d eat
3. you should do some \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
☐ a friends                      ☐ b research                      ☐ c cookies                      ☐ d exercise
4. It's important to keep your body \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a moving                      ☐ b relaxing                      ☐ c sleeping                      ☐ d running

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ have shells and they don't have legs or arms.  
☐ a Dolphins                      ☐ b Lions                      ☐ c Snails                      ☐ d Pandas
2. That phone is very \_\_\_\_\_, but I want to buy a cheaper one.  
☐ a active                      ☐ b expensive                      ☐ c careful                      ☐ d boring
3. My parents didn't buy that couch because it was \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a uncomfortable                      ☐ b friendly                      ☐ c unhappy                      ☐ d irregular

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

checked - citadel - Dead - alive

We went to Jordan on vacation. We arrived in Amman and \_\_\_\_\_ into our hotel in the middle of the city. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Museum. We also explored the Roman Amphitheater, and the Archaeological \_\_\_\_\_. We also had plans to go to the \_\_\_\_\_ Sea. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: امراً النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It's Tuesday and Baher is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about .....

☐ a Baher's school

☐ b Baher's doctor

☐ c Baher's illness

☐ d Baher's clothes

2. Baher has a .....

☐ a cold

☐ b backache

☐ c headache

☐ d toothache

##### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

4. Why can't Baher talk? .....

5. What must Baher do to get better? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. dugong - unusual - is - animal - the - My favorite

2. could - when - Ola - read - was - three - she

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. No, she ..... (not have) a sore throat.

2. Last year, I ..... (cannot) use the computer.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What's the matter, dina .....

2. Ahmed doesn't have a cold .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

Your town

exciting places - a lot of parks





**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Arwa lives in a nice

**a** shop

**b** apartment

**c** farm

**d** ship

2. It's a big apartment with

bedrooms and two bathrooms.

**a** three

**b** two

**c** four

**d** one

3. The apartment is a ..... place with cool designs.

**a** tall

**b** big

**c** modern

**d** old

4. Arwa ..... it very much.

**a** dislikes

**b** hates

**c** eats

**d** likes

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mud bricks made very strong .....

**a** walls

**b** windows

**c** doors

**d** chairs

2. Salma isn't kind to her friend. She is .....

**a** friendly

**b** good

**c** kind

**d** unfriendly

3. The travelers enjoyed the ..... and cool breeze under the tree.

**a** shape

**b** shop

**c** shade

**d** ship

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**amazing - places - attractions - Library**

Alexandria is a big city It is one of the most exciting cities to visit. It has  
restaurants, markets, and museums You can go swimming in the sea.  
The ..... of Alexandria and Qaitbay Citadel are the most important tourist  
there. Tounsts can go inside them and spend a wonderful time.





#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Sara. I'm eleven years old. I like playing sports at the club. I play tennis with my friends. On Friday I went to the club, but I couldn't see my friend Amal because she hurt her knee at tennis practice last night. I'm worried about my friend. I hope she'll feel better tomorrow. Two of my friends had a cold so the coach told us to be careful when we have a cough or a sore throat. We should stay home.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Sara is ..... years old.  
☐ a 10                      ☐ b 11                      ☐ c 15                      ☐ d 9
- The underlined pronoun "she" refers to .....  
☐ a Amal                      ☐ b Sara                      ☐ c the coach                      ☐ d tennis

##### B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Sara like? .....
- Why couldn't Sara see her friend? .....
- When did Sara go to the club? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- have - legs - Snails - or - arms. ....
- to - important - It's - enough - sleep - get. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Rehab ..... (is) unhappy last weekend.
- A: ..... (could) Yasmeen make a sandwich? B: No, she can't.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- fish and other animals have a skeleton .....
- did she like cats .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The doctor's job

Guiding phrases

help patients - give medicine

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع آخر التمراسة

1. My uncle is a   
☐ a teacher      ☐ b scientist      ☐ c driver      ☐ d doctor
2. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in \_\_\_\_\_ America.   
☐ a east      ☐ b west      ☐ c north      ☐ d south
3. People were very \_\_\_\_\_ and helped him with his work there.   
☐ a nervous      ☐ b friendly      ☐ c angry      ☐ d worried
4. He was very interested in howler \_\_\_\_\_.   
☐ a monkeys      ☐ b lions      ☐ c lizards      ☐ d foxes

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are black and white. They eat bamboo.   
☐ a Lions      ☐ b Monkeys      ☐ c Pandas      ☐ d Bats
2. My father always drinks his tea with \_\_\_\_\_ in the balcony.   
☐ a mint      ☐ b oil      ☐ c garlic      ☐ d salt
3. We can't travel to a different country without a \_\_\_\_\_.   
☐ a camera      ☐ b phone      ☐ c computer      ☐ d passport

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sad - cats - parrot - animals

Last week, Hany went to the zoo with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different  like lions and elephants. He saw his favorite bird, the . He was a bit  because he didn't see the giraffes. He's doing a  project about them.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: امراً النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Aya. Last Saturday's morning, we were very busy because we were having a birthday party in the evening. It was my sister's birthday. My mother was in the kitchen. She was cooking all kinds of nice things to eat. My father was out at the market. He bought some fresh fruit. He also went to the toy shop to buy a present for my sister. Outside, my aunt was cleaning the windows. I was in the dining room. I put lots of flowers into the vases which were standing on the table. We worked hard except my little brother who played with the dog in the garden.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Aya's ..... was cleaning the window.  
☐ a uncle      ☐ b cousin      ☐ c aunt      ☐ d son
2. Aya's brother played with the dog in the .....  
☐ a garden      ☐ b bedroom      ☐ c living room      ☐ d kitchen

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why were Aya's family busy last Saturday's morning?
4. Who was cooking all kinds of food? .....
5. What did Aya put into the vases? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات من الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - like - Do - honey - eating - ,Amr? .....
2. the - penguins - fish - She - some - fed. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

افراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They ..... (visit) the museum last month.
2. Don't ..... (eats) all the cookies.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. snails don't have legs or arms .....
2. do you have a new apartment .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

My new apartment

big rooms - clean balcony

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Hala went to a ..... last week.

- ☐ a zoo                      ☐ b club                      ☐ c wildlife park    ☐ d mall

2. She watched the ..... from the car.

- ☐ a dogs                      ☐ b tigers                      ☐ c parrots                      ☐ d lions

3. Some kangaroos had their babies in their .....

- ☐ a arms                      ☐ b pouches                      ☐ c legs                      ☐ d eyes

4. Hala liked the ..... because they were beautiful and colorful.

- ☐ a parrots                      ☐ b kangaroos                      ☐ c trees                      ☐ d lions

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... sleep upside down on trees.

- ☐ a Pandas                      ☐ b Bats                      ☐ c Lions                      ☐ d Parrots

2. My mother puts her money in the .....

- ☐ a square                      ☐ b bank                      ☐ c factory                      ☐ d library

3. One day, a villager wanted to ..... his beans in the market.

- ☐ a sell                      ☐ b plant                      ☐ c grow                      ☐ d cut

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**treatment - special - honey - school**

My name is Eman. I'm a doctor. I work in a hospital. My favorite food is <sup>1</sup> ..... I like honey because it's not only a food but it's also a <sup>2</sup> ..... for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a <sup>3</sup> ..... honey. Only doctors use it.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Fares is sad. He didn't have a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today because they had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr has an earache from swimming. Lama has a toothache. She went to the dentist. Two of his friends have a cold. The coach told them to be careful when they have a cough or a sore throat. They should stay home. Fares is ill, too. He has a backache, and he is worried about his friends.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The underlined word "dentist" means a doctor who takes care of our  
☐ a bones      ☐ b lungs      ☐ c stomach      ☐ d teeth
- ..... has an earache from swimming.  
☐ a Fares      ☐ b Lama      ☐ c Amr      ☐ d Tarek

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Why is Fares sad? .....
- What should they do when they have a cough or a sore throat? .....
- Who told them to be careful? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في السرب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

- houses - a special - Egyptian - style - Ancient - had.
- a - there - here - Is - library - near? .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- When I was young, I could ..... (sang).
- She doesn't ..... (has) a headache. She has an earache.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- amira has a sore throat .....
- Did hala like the kangaroos .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following**

**guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

How to stay healthy

exercise every day - a lot of water



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Last week, my friends and I were in \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a Egypt      ☐ b Rome      ☐ c China      ☐ d New York
- It was a/an ..... visit.  
☐ a messy      ☐ b bad      ☐ c exciting      ☐ d boring
- We ate ..... pasta.  
☐ a American      ☐ b Egyptian      ☐ c French      ☐ d Italian
- We arrived at our ..... at night.  
☐ a hotel      ☐ b home      ☐ c park      ☐ d apartment

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A meeting point is somewhere where people .....  
☐ a travel      ☐ b meet      ☐ c leave      ☐ d save
- She is very ..... because she lost her bag.  
☐ a unfriendly      ☐ b immoral      ☐ c unhappy      ☐ d uncomfortable
- He is a foolish boy. He speaks .....  
☐ a rudely      ☐ b politely      ☐ c nicely      ☐ d quietly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - traditional - eat - restaurant

I've lived in Giza all my life. I have a ..... here. We serve ..... Egyptian food. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the ..... in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There is a lot to see and do there. It is a big city with lots of amazing restaurant, stores, markets and museums.

My friend Jens is visiting Alexandria from Germany. He thinks it is really cool here. He thinks there are some good museums, but he hasn't been to any yet. He loves sitting in the roof garden of his hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.





My friend Hana has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant cuisine. They serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. They have excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old town.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My friend Jens like drinking tea in the .....  
☐ a beaches      ☐ b shop      ☐ c museum      ☐ d roof
2. My friend Hana buys her ingredients from the .....  
☐ a hotel      ☐ b market      ☐ c supermarket      ☐ d park

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
4. Why does the writer's friend like to visit Alexandria?
5. What does Hana own in Alexandria?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. armchair - is - This - uncomfortable - very - blue.
2. couldn't - Maha - when - a baby - was - swim - she.

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

امرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They ..... (don't) travel to Aswan last year.
2. This house is upside down. It's an ..... (.....) house.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the parrot is a very beautiful bird .....
2. what did you do yesterday .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقبره إيشائة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

**< Honey and its uses**

**Guiding questions**

- 1- Do you like eating honey?
- 2- How can you use honey as a medicine?



**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و صغ دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Omar loves his .....  
☐ a bedroom      ☐ b kitchen      ☐ c living room      ☐ d balcony
- On the right, there is a/an .....  
☐ a armchair      ☐ b bed      ☐ c couch      ☐ d chair
- On the left, there is a .....  
☐ a television      ☐ b computer      ☐ c poster      ☐ d closet
- Omar loves watching television .....  
☐ a in the evening      ☐ b in the afternoon  
☐ c in the morning      ☐ d at night




**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- When something is ....., we can't use it.  
☐ a unhappy      ☐ b useless      ☐ c useful      ☐ d exciting
- You can see the most amazing ..... at the museum.  
☐ a shopping mall      ☐ b squares      ☐ c monuments      ☐ d banks
- Adel has a/an ..... His head hurts.  
☐ a headache      ☐ b earache      ☐ c cough      ☐ d sore throat

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**relax - buildings - parks - time**

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise , but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and . We spent a lot of  there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long. There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about **fascinating** history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to visit in New Alamein.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The beach is 14 ..... long.  
☐ a meters      ☐ b kilometers      ☐ c centimeters      ☐ d kilograms
- The word "**fascinating**" means .....  
☐ a boring      ☐ b ugly      ☐ c useless      ☐ d beautiful

##### B. Answer the following questions:

- Where can you go when it's hot? .....
- What can you find in the Archaeological Center? .....
- Are there treasures in New Alamein? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

- year - Singapore - I - last - visited. ....
- read - **Choose** - to - book - a good. ....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I get up ..... (**at**) the morning.
- ..... (**Didn't**) play in the street.

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- Many tourists come to visit egypt .....
- does adel have a sore throat? .....

#### 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

What is it?

Where does it live?

Your favorite animal

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Omar is an excellent .....

☐ a father☐ b teacher☐ c engineer☐ d student

2. He likes to ..... his friends.

☐ a walk☐ b hit☐ c help☐ d fight

3. He likes to read books in the .....

☐ a restaurant☐ b beach☐ c library☐ d home

4. His favorite subject is .....

☐ a English☐ b Arabic☐ c French☐ d Italian

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They went to the ..... to play football.

☐ a hospital☐ b library☐ c museum☐ d playground

2. I like the beach, it is a ..... place.

☐ a relaxing☐ b dark☐ c boring☐ d dangerous

3. We put our clothes in a ..... when we travel.

☐ a camera☐ b passport☐ c ticket☐ d suitcase

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plant - shade - air - feed

Trees are very important in our life. Trees give us ..... and shelter in hot weather. They help to clean the ..... . They give us food, too. We should ..... more trees.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الاسئلة:

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The opposite of underlined word "old" is .  
 a new                      b ugly                      c dark                      d bad
- Mona moved to a new .....  
 a school                      b class                      c apartment                      d city

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence
- How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?
- Who does Mona share a room with?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح ليكون جملاً:

- you - Do - living - like - here? .....
- to - went - Ramez - a wildlife - park. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Did it ..... (rained) yesterday?
- I ..... (has) a headache.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي

- do you like fish .....
- We went to luxor last year .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة إسرائيه من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite place in Egypt

Guiding questions

What is your favorite place?

What can you see in this place?

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Last summer, I went with my family to .....

☐ a Luxor

☐ b Aswan

☐ c Alexandria

☐ d Cairo

2. We went there by .....

☐ a taxi

☐ b train

☐ c plane

☐ d ship

3. We had ..... at a nice restaurant.

☐ a lunch

☐ b snack

☐ c dinner

☐ d breakfast

4. We visited Alexandria Library and .....

☐ a pyramids

☐ b Qaitbay Citadel

☐ c Egyptian Museum

☐ d zoo

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of ..... visit Egypt from all over the world.

☐ a towns

☐ b tourists

☐ c squares

☐ d factories

2. When you travel abroad, you usually need a .....

☐ a passport

☐ b diary

☐ c pen

☐ d book

3. I went to the ..... to buy new clothes yesterday.

☐ a club

☐ b school

☐ c library

☐ d shopping mall

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**cold - body - animals - pouch**

I went to a wildlife park yesterday with my family. We saw a lot of ❶ ..... We saw kangaroos. The little kangaroos were sitting inside their mom's ❷ ..... We saw penguins, too. They are in special ❸ ..... place.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, it was my mother's birthday. All my family came to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, uncles and my friends came. There was lots of food, meat salad, cookies and fruit. I played with my friends and my cousins. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and drank a carton of orange juice. We said 'Happy birthday to my mother. My sister, and I gave her a present. It was a special day. We were happy.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I drank a carton of ..... juice.

- ☐ a banana      ☐ b apple      ☐ c orange      ☐ d mango

2. My family come to celebrate my ..... birthday.

- ☐ a sister's      ☐ b mother's      ☐ c cousin's      ☐ d brother's

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When's the mother's birthday? .....
4. What did they eat at the party? .....
5. Give a suitable title for this passage. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جملاً:

1. is - **What** - the - matter? .....
2. borrow - **I** - books - to - want - some. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My birthday party is ..... (**at**) May 21<sup>st</sup>.
2. She can ..... (**gets**) high marks in this exam.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my favorite hobby is reading .....
2. does the snake have legs .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

كتب مقرة استسافه من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

beautiful beaches - fascinating history

# 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. We went to the theme park on .  
☐ a Sunday      ☐ b vacation      ☐ c the weekend      ☐ d Friday
2. We took lots of photos with my .....  
☐ a phone      ☐ b tablet      ☐ c computer      ☐ d camera
3. We had a wonderful ..... there.  
☐ a time      ☐ b picnic      ☐ c view      ☐ d trip
4. We went home by .....  
☐ a plane      ☐ b taxi      ☐ c car      ☐ d train




# 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 ..... fly at night. They sleep upside down on trees.  
☐ a Penguins      ☐ b Snails      ☐ c Bats      ☐ d Pandas
2. The view from the ..... is wonderful.  
☐ a oven      ☐ b elevator      ☐ c balcony      ☐ d armchair
3. This ..... serves delicious dishes.  
☐ a hospital      ☐ b restaurant      ☐ c library      ☐ d bank

# 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wall - closet - next - middle

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right is my bed with a desk  to it. On the left is my sister's bed. In the  of the room there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the  there are lots of posters of animals.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Monday, Soha and Habiba went to the wildlife park. When they arrived, it was very hot in the park. They saw lots of different animals and birds such as parrots, kangaroos and penguins. Soha liked penguins the best. She thinks they look funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked pandas. They are **huge** with thick white and black fur. Soha and Habiba had a nice time and they were very happy.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The underlined word "**huge**" means very .....  
 a small                      b big                      c tall                      d short
- ..... liked the penguins best.  
 a Mona                      b Habiba                      c Soha                      d Sara

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- What did Soha and Habiba go to the wildlife park?
- What is the main idea of the text? .....
- Did Soha and Habiba have a happy time there?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- is - bank, - **Where** - please - the? .....
- love - **I** - tea - drinking - mint. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We moved to a new city ..... (**at**) 2014.
- Last week we ..... (**go**) to the market.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

- do you have a sore throat .....
- i visited my aunt last week .....

**8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

**The importance of trees**

**Guiding phrases**

give shade - healthy food

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Amir's favorite unusual animal is the  
☐ a lion                      ☐ b dugong                      ☐ c penguin                      ☐ d panda
- It is from .....  
☐ a Egypt                      ☐ b India                      ☐ c America                      ☐ d France
- It's very .....  
☐ a sad                      ☐ b bad                      ☐ c cute                      ☐ d awful
- Its nickname is the .....  
☐ a sea cow                      ☐ b sea bed                      ☐ c grass                      ☐ d face

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- This ..... is very uncomfortable. I can't sit on it.  
☐ a armchair                      ☐ b closet                      ☐ c shower                      ☐ d oven
- My sister is a good ..... She reads about 20 books a week.  
☐ a farmer                      ☐ b footballer                      ☐ c climber                      ☐ d reader
- Laila wrote about her trip in her .....  
☐ a wall                      ☐ b bag                      ☐ c ticket                      ☐ d diary

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

friends - sleep - spend - diet

There are many things we should do to stay healthy. It's important to drink water to keep your body works well. You should ..... time with early. Experts think that the best way to stay healthy is to ..... time with your ..... and family. At that time you focus on being happy.



**Read the text and answer the questions:**

قرا النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Hassan. I live in a perfect town near the Nile. There's a big zoo next to my school. You can see lots of animals and birds there. You can feed some of them, too. The weather is usually hot in summer, so there is a big waterpark that is always open. It costs five pounds to get in. There are many parks along the Nile in my town. You can enjoy having picnics or sitting in the green areas. Also, you can take a boat trip on the Nile.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Hassan lives in a/an ..... town.  
☐ a small      ☐ b noisy      ☐ c perfect      ☐ d old
- There's a big ..... next to the school.  
☐ a park      ☐ b zoo      ☐ c mall      ☐ d hospital

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- How much does it cost to get in the waterpark?
- What can Hassan enjoy on the Nile?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.



**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- didn't - She - school - yesterday - come to.
- favorite - place - the - My - is - beach.



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- What ..... (do) you do yesterday?
- She doesn't ..... (has) a cut on her arm.



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- could you read when you were a child .....
- she wrote about her trip .....



**Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقالة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

"Homes in Egypt"

Guiding phrases

near the Nile - made mud bricks



## A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختار الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة



1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their \_\_\_\_\_ . (snow - cool - warm)
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ bricks helped to keep their homes cool. (mud - clay - pen)
3. Some people painted their homes \_\_\_\_\_ to make them cooler. (green - white - black)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

• trees - wildlife - Could - yesterday

- Ayman : Where did you go ① \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- Ramez : I went to the new ② \_\_\_\_\_ park.
- Ayman : ③ \_\_\_\_\_ you go near the lions?
- Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the ④ \_\_\_\_\_ .

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Waleed's dad and this is my farm. I have got some sheep and two buffaloes on my farm. We used to have donkeys, but we don't have any now. I grow a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes. We live near the river. I lived in a traditional house with my family. I have three children. Waleed is my youngest child. The women in my family are my wife and my mother. There are two men, me and my dad.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Waleed's father have got on his farm?
2. What does Waleed's father grow?



**B - Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 Waleed's family lives near the ..... (ocean - desert - river)
4. Waleed's father lives in a ..... house. (old ~~9~~ traditional - modern)
- 5 The underlined word "youngest" is the opposite of ..... (oldest - nearest - shortest)

**D- Vocabulary and Structures****4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اذكر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a big bedroom, so I ..... it with my sister.  
☐ a cook                      ☐ b get                      ☐ c share
2. Do you ..... a headache?  
☐ a have                      ☐ b has                      ☐ c is
3. She ..... drive a car. She takes the bus.  
☐ a can                      ☐ b can't                      ☐ c couldn't
4. We had lunch at an Italian .....  
☐ a museum                      ☐ b store                      ☐ c restaurant
5. We can't travel to different country without a .....  
☐ a camera                      ☐ b passport                      ☐ c phone

**5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. did - people - use - How - homes - to build?

.....

2. honey - likes - Omar - eating.

.....

3. rest - We - under - the - trees.

.....

4. library - a - There - is - our town - in.

.....

5. did - in - eat - the park - What - they?

.....

21 امتحان المرحل الشريفة - منطقة الدقهلية الأزهرية

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأحتر الاجابة الصحيحة:

أصص الاستماع اأأر الكراسة



1. I get up at ..... o'clock. (six - seven - eight)
2. I have my ..... with my parents. (lunch - breakfast - dinner)
3. I like ..... (apples - honey - oranges)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأأأل المحادثة

matter - have - doctor's - going

- Sami : Where are you ① ..... ?
- Hani : I'm going to the ② .....
- Sami : What's the ③ ..... ?
- Ramez : I ④ ..... a sore throat.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص وأأب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Magdy I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm. There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?
2. What does Magdy's father have?

**B - Choose the correct answer:**

3. There are \_\_\_\_\_ rooms in Magdy's house. (big - small)
4. They are \_\_\_\_\_ family. (nice - sad - happy)
5. Magdy loves his \_\_\_\_\_ room. (big - small - nice)

**D- Vocabulary and Structures**

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have dinner at the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a bank                      ☐ b museum                      ☐ c restaurant
2. I like sitting on this armchair. It's very \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a comfortable                      ☐ b unfriendly                      ☐ c unlucky
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ to Aswan two years ago.  
☐ a go                      ☐ b went                      ☐ c goes
4. I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ them in the dark.  
☐ a saw                      ☐ b sees                      ☐ c see
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ can't fly, but it can swim.  
☐ a bat                      ☐ b bird                      ☐ c parrot

**5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. a headache - you - Do - have?
2. basketball - I - play - can.
3. eat - Don't - library - the - in.
4. balcony - is - The - fantastic.
5. should - stay - We - home.

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

armchair - share - to - On

I love my bedroom. I ..... it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next ..... it. .... the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an ..... with two cushions on it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ..... is a place where you can borrow books.

- ☐ a hospital      ☐ b library      ☐ c club      ☐ d park

2. I take ..... with my phone.

- ☐ a keys      ☐ b photos      ☐ c money      ☐ d trip

3. You can catch a train at the .....

- ☐ a hospital      ☐ b library      ☐ c station      ☐ d park

4. I go swimming ..... Fridays.

- ☐ a at      ☐ b in      ☐ c with      ☐ d on

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Friday, Sara and Israa went to the wildlife park. They saw lots of different animals and birds. They saw the penguins. The penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. They can swim, but they can't fly. Sara liked the pandas. Pandas eat bamboo. Sara and Israa had lunch under a tree. They also took many pictures. They had a nice time there.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about a trip to the .....

- ☐ a wildlife park      ☐ b hospital      ☐ c zoo      ☐ d club

2. They had lunch under a .....

- ☐ a tree      ☐ b house      ☐ c restaurant      ☐ d cave

3. The pandas eat .....  
 a fish                      b bamboo                      c meat                      d koshari
4. The penguins are ..... and white.  
 a black                      b red                      c green                      d yellow

### (B) Writing

#### 4 Choose the correct or the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. went - the - Ramez - to - wildlife - park.

- a Ramez went the wildlife to park.  
 b Ramez to went the wildlife park.  
 c Ramez went to the wildlife park.

2. has - Samy - a - cold.

- a Samy a cold has.  
 b Samy has a cold.  
 c Samy cold a has.

#### 5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

a	I went with my friends.	1 - (                      )
b	I'm Sara.	2 - (                      )
c	We had lunch under a tree there.	3 - (                      )
d	Yesterday, I went to Al-Azhar Park.	4 - (                      )



# Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع  
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات  
الخاصة بكتاب **Bit by Bit**

## March Test 1 on Units 7-8

I like eating honey for breakfast. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. But don't put it on your cut knee.

## March Test 2 on Units 7-8

My friend Daila likes blogging about different things. She's writing about unusual homes. Daila found the upside down house in the Netherlands online.

## April Test 1 on Units 9-10

There are many rules we should follow in the library. We shouldn't eat in the library. We shouldn't use our cell phones there. We shouldn't lose our books. We should drink water outside the library.

## April Test 2 on Units 9-10

I'm Peter. I'm from America. I went to Alexandria on holiday. I like Alexandria. It's a beautiful city near the sea. There are lots of amazing restaurant, stores, markets and museums. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions.

## General Tests

① محافظة القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. The tree gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers.

② محافظة الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Ahmed lives in Alexandria. Alexandria is a big city in the north of Egypt. It has a nice weather. It's famous for the beautiful beaches.

③ محافظة القليوبية - إدارة طوخ

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My brother Omar loves his bedroom. On the right, there is an armchair with two cushions. On the left, there is a television. Omar loves watching television in the evening.

④ محافظة المنوفية - إدارة السادات

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My cousin Fareeda has two sisters. She stayed in her old apartment about ten years. Then, her father had a new job. They moved to a new apartment. The new apartment is big. They have two bedrooms with a big balcony.



## 5) محافظة الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali is a pupil in primary five. He has a big apartment. Ali loves his bedroom. On the right, there is an armchair with two cushions. On the left there is a closet. Ali loves watching television in the evening.

## 6) محافظة الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I had a lovely day yesterday. I went to Alexandria with my friends. We went by train as it was very comfortable. We went to see our English teacher Mr. Ali. He was very happy to see us.

## 7) محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Laila is a doctor. She likes honey because it's useful. Honey is also used as a treatment. Honey was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria.

## 8) محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ramez went to the wildlife park yesterday. He saw a lot of animals. There were penguins. They can swim, they live in cold places. The parrots were so beautiful. He fed penguins some fish. He had a great time there.

## 9) محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

The dugong is a sea animal. It lives all his life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. The dugong has got a lovely friendly face. It is cute. Its nickname is the sea cow.

## 10) محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

It's important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. We can do lots of things to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving.

## 11) محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Arwa lives in a nice apartment. It's a big apartment with two bedrooms and two bathrooms. The apartment is a modern place with cool designs. Arwa likes it very much.

## 12) محافظة الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My uncle is a scientist. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in North America. People were very friendly and helped him with his work there. He was very interested in howler monkeys.

## 13) محافظة مطروح - إدارة مطروح

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Hala went to a wildlife park. She watched the lions from the car. She saw the kangaroos running. Some kangaroos had their babies in their pouches. Hala liked the parrots because they were beautiful and colorful.

## 14) محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Last week, my friends and I were in Rome. It was an exciting visit. We ate Italian pasta. We arrived at our hotel at night.

## محافظة الفيوم - إدارة إطسا

15

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My name is Omar. I love my living room. I spend most of my time here in the living room. On the right, there is a couch with two modern cushions. On the left, there is an armchair and a big television in front of it. I love watching television at night with my family.

## محافظة بني سويف - إدارة ناصر

16

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Omar is an excellent student. He likes to help his friends. He likes to read books in the library. His favorite subject is Arabic. His teachers like him.

## محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبانوب

17

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We had dinner at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We had a great time there.

## محافظة اسوان - إدارة كوم امبو

18

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I went with my friend Hisham to the theme park on vacation. We went on different rides. The weather was nice. We had lunch and ice cream. We took lots of photos with my phone. We had a wonderful time there. Then, we went home by taxi at five o'clock.

## محافظة البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة

19

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Amir's favorite unusual animal is the dugong. It is from Egypt. It's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow.

## امتحان الأزهر - منطقة أسيوط الأزهرية

20

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ancient Egyptians were great at building their homes. They wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud brick helped to keep their homes cool. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler.

## امتحان الأزهر - منطقة الدقهلية الأزهرية

21

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My name's Adel. I'm a pupil in primary five I get up at seven o'clock. I have breakfast with my parents. I like honey.